DESCRIPTIVE ANALYSIS

OF

KACHI (KACCHI)

Thosis submitted to

THE UNIVERSITY OF POORA

for the degree of

DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

The state of the s

LINCUISTICS

By

S. E. Rohra

H.A.

Research Fellow, U.G.C.

Post-graduate and Research Institute
POONA

(INDIA)

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

I feel it is my secred duty to extend my heart-felt thanks to :

- 1. Dr. S.M. Katre, Director, Deccan College, who kindly afforded me all encouragement and direction.
- 2. Dr. A.M. Chatge at whose feet I have had the training in Linguistics and under whose learned guidance I have completed the present thesis.
- 3. Dr. P.B. Pandit who has ever been source of sympathy, inspiration and valued guidance.
- Dr. Kalelkar, Dr. Mehandle, Dr. Kelkar, Dr. Khubchandani, Dr. Apte, Dr. Bilgri, Dr. Shankar Bhat and Mr. Mutatkar.

I thank Dr. Ehubchandani in particular with whom I have had occasions to discuss several problems relevant to my thesis.

Decem College, especially the Registrar, Mr. Khirsagar, accountant Mr. Bhate, auditor, Mr. Bhave and the -librarian Mr. Belsare for their kind co-operation.

My friends Dr. Murlidhar Jetley, Mr. Nandlal otwani and Mr. R.K. Sharma from whom I received all properation and help.

Shri. D.D. Phadke for the neat and very prompt bing of the thesis.

8. All the informants, particularly shri. V. H. Hai, from whom I got full co-operation.

[1828588882555]

ABBRÉVIATIONS

adj.	Adjective	obl.	oblique case
adv.	Adverb	pass.	Passive
aux.	Auxiliary	pp	Past-Participle
C.	Consonant	pl.	Plural
Cn.	Causal	pro.	Pronoun
Ca-1	First Causal	prox.	Proximate
Ca-2	Second Causal	pre.	Present
conj.	Conjunctive	eg.	Singular
Cont.	Continuous	Sub.	Subject
Def.	Definite	Subj.	Subjunctive
Dem.	Demonstrative	Subs.	Substantive
Der,der.	Derived	tr.Tr.	Transitive
Dub.	Dubious	Voc.	Vocative Case
Dur.	Durative	Vd.	Voiced
emph.	Emphatie	v1.	Voiceless
fem.,f.	Feminine	V.	Vowel
Fut, fut.	Future	7	Nasalized Vowel
PP	Future Parti-	1.	First person
Rebi.	Habitual	2.	Second Person
Imp.	Imperative	3.	Third person
Impl.	Implosive	[]	Phonetic bracket
int.	Intransitive	11	·Phonemie bracket
Lit.	Literarly	E3	Morphemic bracket
mas.,m.	Nesculine		
Nom.	Rominative- case.		

003.

object

CONTENTS

DEDICATION.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT.

ABBREVIATIONS.

apter			Page
0		INTRODUCTION	
	0. 1.	Geographical and Linguistical situation in Eutch.	1
	0. 2.	Sub-dialects of Kachi	I
	0. 3.	Phonological distinction between the Sub-dialects.	III
	0. 4.	Population of Kachi speakers.	III
	0. 5.	Literature of Kachi.	IV
	0. 6.	Work available on Kachi.	٧
	0. 7.	Scope of the present work.	VI
	0, 8,	Data and the informants	VI
		PHONOLOGY	
1.		SEGMENTAL PHONOLOGY	
	1. 1.	Inventory of the Segmental phonomes.	1
		1.1.1 Vowels 1.1.2 Consonants	1

1.	2.	Some ph	nonetic and phonemic features.	5
		1.2.2	Length Lip-rounding Nasalisation	2 2 2
1.	3.	Classii	rication of the Vowels.	Э
1.	4.	Vovel-c	contrast	. 3
		1.4.1	Contrast between the Vowels of	4
		1.4.2	Contrast between the comparable Vowels of class-2.	4
		1.4.3	Contrast between the comparable Vowels of class-1 and class-2.	6
1.	5.	General	phonetic description (Vowels)	7
1.	6.	Allopho	onics (Vowels)	8
			Vowels of Class-1. Vowels of Class-2.	8 9
1.	7.	Distric	oution.	10
			Vowels of Class-1. Vowels of Class-2.	10
1.	8.	Vowel-	sequences.	12
		1.8.2	General limitations. A chart of the Vowel sequences. Examples of the Vowel-sequences.	13 18 15
1.	9.	Consons	ant contrast.	17
		1.9.1	Contrast between the comparable	17
		1.9.2	Contrast in the manner of	20
		1.9.3	Contrast in the point of	23
		1.9.4	articulation. Contrast between a phoneme and its absence.	27

70

1.10.	General phonetic description (Consonants).	29
	1.10.1 Stops. 1.10.2 Voiceless stops. 1.10.3 Voiced stops. 1.10.4 Implosives. 1.10.5 Nasals. 1.10.6 Continuants.	29 30 30 30 31 31
1.11.	Allophonies (Consonants).	31
1.12.	Distribution.	38
1.13.	Consonant-Clusters.	48
	1.13.1 Formation of the consonant-clusters, 1.13.2 Distribution of the consonant - clusters. 1.13.2.1 Initial clusters. 1.13.2.2 Final clusters. 1.13.2.3 Medial clusters.	44 45 47
1.14.	Syllabic pattern.	61
	1.14.1 Syllabic patterns in the mono- syllables. 1.14.2 Syllabic patterns in the second- syllable. 1.14.3 Syllabic patterns in the third- syllable. 1.14.4 Syllabic patterns in the fourth- syllable. 1.14.5 Syllabic patterns in the fifth - sixth, and seventh syllables.	61 62 63 63
	SUPRASSOMENTAL PHONOLOGY	64
2. 1.	Suprasegmental phonemes.	64
2. 2.	Nasalisation.	64
	2.2.1 Contrast between masals and masalised vowels.	64
	2.2.2 Occurrence of nasals with stops. 2.2.3 Vowels following the nasals. 2.2.4 Vowels preceding the nasals. 2.2.4 Vowel sequences.	66 67 67

2. 3.	Juncture	67
	2.3.1 Kinds of juncture. 2.3.2 Contrast between the junctures. 2.3.3 Phonetic description of the	67 68 68
	junctures. 2.3.3.1 Close juncture. 2.3.3.2 Open juncture. 2.3.3.3 Terminal falling and rising junctures.	68 69 70
	MORPHOLOGY	
	SUBSTANTIVE	
3. 1. 3.2 . 3. 3.	Phonological features. Substantives ending with-s. Grammatical categories.	71 78 73
Post	3.3.1 Gender. 3.3.2 Number. 3.3.3 Case. 3.3.4 Position.	74 74 75 76
3. 4.	Classification of the Substantives.	78
	3.4.1 Masculine substantives. 3.4.2 Feminine substantives. 3.4.3 Marginal substantives.	79 83 88
3, 5,	Inflectional Suffix-morphemes and their allomorphs.	89
	PRONOUN	
4. 1.	Inventory.	91
4. 2.	Grammatical categories.	91
	4.2.1 Number. 4.8.2 Case.	98
4. 3.	Classes of the pronouns.	98
4. 4.	Classification of the pronouns.	93

	4. 8.	Conjugation of the pronouns.	94
		4.5.1 Class-1. 4.5.2 Class-2. 4.5.3 Class-3. 4.5.4 Class-4.	94 95 97 99
	4. 6.	The inflectional suffix-morphemes and their allomorphs.	100
В.		ADJECTIVE .	
	5. 1.	Adjectives, Substantives and - indeclinables.	101
	5. 2.	Classification of adjectives.	104
	5. 3.	Inflection of the declinable adjectives.	105
	5. 4.	The inflectional Suffix-morphemes and their allomorphs.	107
	5. 8.	Numerals.	107
	5. 6.	Grammatical categories expressed by the numerals.	111
	5. 7.	Allomorphs of N. Stems.	116
6		VERB-ROOT	
	6, 1,	Description of verb-root.	118
	6 .2.	Phonological structure of v.root.	119
		6.2.1 Syllabic pattern. 6.2.2 Distribution of vowels and consonants within a v.root.	119
		6.2.3 Vowel-sequences and consonant- clusters within a v.root.	123
		6.2.4 Dropping of - 9.	124
		6.2.5 Addition of glide -y.	124
	6. 3.	Classification of V. roots.	125
	6. 4.	Formations in which the distinction of Int. and tr. is morphologically expressed	126

6, 5,	The formations in which the distinction of Int. and tr. is not maintained.	127
6. 6.	Exceptional Int. roots.	127
6. 7.	Exceptional tr. roots.	128
7.	VERB-STEM	
7.	A graph showing the formation of V.stems.	130
7. 1.	A graph showing the classification of V.stems.	131
7. 2.	Classification of V. stems.	131
7. 3.	Simple Int. and tr. V. stems.	132
7. 4.	V. stems derived by internal change.	183
7. 5.	Causal.	136
	7.5.1 Formation 7.5.2 First causal 7.5.3 Decond causal	136 136 139
7. 6.	Passive.	141
	7.6.1 Simple passive.	141
7. 7.	Participial V.stems.	148
	7.7.1 Future participle. 7.7.2 Past participle.	148 149
7.8 .	Formation of future participle.	150
7. 9.	Formation of past participle.	152
7,10,	The formations of V.root which are not used as the verbal forms.	157
	7.10.1 Past conjunctive. 7.10.2 Gerundive. 7.10.3 Future-2. 7.10.4 Infinitive.	158 161 162 164

•	CONTROL OF BUILD	
8. 1.	The grammatical categories expressed by the verb.	167
	8.1.1 Gender. 8.1.2 Number. 8.1.3 Person. 8.1.4 Mood. 8.1.5 Aspect. 8.1.6 Tense.	167 168 168 169 169
8. 2.	Classification of the verbal forms.	171
	8.2.1 Simple verbal forms. 8.2.3 Complex verbal forms. 8.2.3 Compound verbal forms.	172 174 177
8, 3,	Personal Suffixes.	179
9.	PORMATION OF SIMPLE VERBAL FORMS	
9. 1.	Description.	188
9. 2.	Simple formations.	184
9. 3.	Imperative mood.	184
9. 4.	Future imperative mood.	186
9. 5.	Subjunctive mood.	188
9. 6.	Future tense.	190
9. 7.	Past tense.	194
	9.7.1 Formations from the Int.bases. 9.7.2 Formations from the tr.bases. 9.7.2.1 Subjective formations. 9.7.2.2 Objective formations. 9.7.3 Passive formations.	195 196 197 199
0.	AUXILIARIES	
10. 1.	Auxiliary verbs and their function.	201
10 0	Trends of sunt literature	000

	10. 3.	Conjugation of auxiliaries.	203
	10. 4.	Description and distribution of the auxiliaries.	204
11		CONJUGATION OF THE COMPLEX PORMATIONS	
	11. 1.	List of the complex formations.	216
	11. 2.	Present tense.	217
	11. 3.	Present continuous - 1.	219
	11. 4.	Present continuous - 2.	221
	11. 5.	Present Durative - 1.	883
	11. 6.	Present Durative - 2.	225
	11. 7.	Future Continuous - 1.	227
	11. 8.	Future Continuous - 2.	280
	11. 9.	Future Dubious.	233
	11.10.	Future Subjunctive.	235
	11.11.	Habitual Present.	238
	11.12.	Habitual Past.	240
	11.13.	Habitual Present-Continuous.	243
	11.14.	Habitual Past-Continuous.	246
	11.15.	Past Continuous-1.	249
		11.15.1 Intransitive formations. 11.15.2 Transitive formations. 11.15.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.15.2.2 Objective formations.	249 250 250 251
	11.16.	Past Continuous-2.	251
		11.16.1 Intransitive formations. 11.16.2 Transitive formations. 11.16.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.16.2.2 Objective formations.	25 8 25 8 25 8 25 8

11.17.	Past Continuous-3.	254
	11.17.1 Intransitive formations. 11.17.2 Transitive formations. 11.17.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.17.2.2 Objective formations.	254 255 265 266
11.18.	Past-Dublous.	257
	11.18.1 Intransitive formations. 11.18.2 Transitive formations. 11.18.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.18.2.2 Objective formations.	257 258 258 258 259
11.19.	Past Subjunctive.	259
	11.19.1 Intransitive formations. 11.19.2 Transitive formations. 11.19.2.1 Subjective formations.	262 261 260
11.20.	Perfect Present.	262
	11.20.1 Intransitive formations. 11.20.2 Transitive formations. 11.20.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.20.2.2 Objective formations.	262 263 263 264
11.21.	Perfect Pest.	264
	11.21.1 Intransitive formations. 11.21.2 Transitive formations. 11.21.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.21.2.2 Objective formations.	265 266 266 266
11.22.	Pest-Durative-1.	267
	11.22.1 Intransitive formations. 11.22.2 Transitive formations. 11.22.2.1 Subjective formations. 11.22.2.2 Objective formations.	267 268 268 269
11.23.	Past-Durative -2.	870
	11.23.1 Intransitive formations. 11.23.2 Transitive formations. 11.23.2.1 Subjective formations.	270 271 271
	11.23.2.2 Objective formations.	278

12.			COMPOUND PASSIVE	
,	12.	1.	Formation.	274
,	12.	2.	Imperative.	274
1	12.	3.	Future Imperative.	275
1	15.	4.	Subjunctive.	275
1	12.	5.	Future.	276
1	12.	6.	Fast.	277
13.			COMPOUND VERB	
	13.	1.	Description.	278
,	13.	2.	'Operator' and '.Operated'.	278
	13.	9.	Types of Compound verb.	278
1	13.	4.	Formation of Compound Verb.	280
1	13.	5.	Conjugation of Compound Verb.	292
14.			POST POSITION	
	14.	1.	Description.	285
	14.	2.	Classification.	285
			14.2.1 Basic and positional. 14.2.2 Simple and composite. 14.2.3 Declinable and indeclinable.	285 287 287
	14.	3.	Inflection.	286
	14.	4.	Combination of two post positions.	289
	14.	8.	Post positions necessarly occurring after je 'of'.	290
	14.	6.	Post positions optionally occurring after je 'of'.	290
15.			ADVERB	
,	15.	1.	Description.	292
		3825	2000年1月1日 1月1日 1月1日 1日 1	1 3 1 5 1

lassification

	15.2.1 Basic and positional. 15.2.2 Simple, Complex and Compound. 15.2.3 Declinable and indeclinable.	292 293 294
16.	CONJUNCTION	
16. 1.	Description.	296
16. 2.	Kinds of conjunctions.	297
717.	INTERJECTION	
17. 1.	Description.	299
17. 2.	Rinds of interjections.	299
	TEXIS	
18.	Kachi Texts.	301
	LSXICON	
19.	Eachi Lexicon.	336
	Appendix - 1	422
	Select Bibliography.	
	Appendix - 2	423
	Bibliography of works on Kachi.	

0

INTRODUCTION

0.1 Geographical and Linguistical situation in Kutch :

Eutch is a part of Gujrat State (India). It is a peninsula lying between the peninsula of Kathiawar and the province of Sind (Pakistan.). It is bounded by deserts (north and east), gulf (south) and sea (west.).

Linguistically it is surrounded by Sindhi
(in the north), Gujrati (in the east), Kathiawari (in south) and Marwari- a dialect of Rajsthani (in
the north east). All these contigous languages of Kachi belong to the Indo-European family of the languages. In Kutch itself Gujrati, Aheri (Bhili) and
Hindi languages are spoken along with Kachi.

0.2 Sub-dialects of Kachi :

Grierson, in his Linguistic Survey of India, 1 has divided Kachi into two Sub-dialects, namely 'proper

^{1.} Grierson: Linguistic Survey of India. Vol. VIII. Part. 1.pp. 183.

Machi' and 'Kaysthi.' The former is used by Jadeja and Lohana communities while the latter is spoken by the Kaysth (Bhatia) community. Raysthi is the mix - ture of Rachi, Rejsthani and Gujrati.

It is true that Proper Kachi is considerably different from Kaysthi, but even Proper Kachi is not uniform everywhere. There are at least three distinct Sub-dialects of Proper Kachi. For the sake of convenience, these Sub-dialects have been designated on the basis of their geographical situations.

These Sub-dialects are as follows:

(i) Bani Kachi.

This Sub-dialect is spoken in the area which is called Bani 'field'. It is the grazing land on the north border of Kutch. The speakers of this Sub-dialect are mainly shepherds. As this area is very near to the province of Sind, this Sub-dialect is very close to Sindhi Language.

(ii) Vagdi Kechi.

This Sub-dialect is spoken in the area which is called Vagad. It is on the east-south border of Kutch and is connected with Gujrat. This Sub-dialect is thus near to Gujrati language.

(111) Mandvi Kachi.

This Sub-dialect is spoken in the Coastal area, the west border of Kutch. Mandvi, Mundra, - Jakhau etc., ports come under this region. As Mandvi is the biggest port among all the ports of Kutch, this Sub-dialect has been named after it.

The present work is chiefly based on this Sub-dislect.

0.8 Phonological distinction between the Sub - dialects:

There may many points of distinction between these Sub-dialects but there are two major phonological points which separate these Sub-dialect from each - other. These two points are implosive and nasal sounds. In 'Bani Kachi', as in Sindhi, there are four implosives (b, d, j, g) and five nasals (m, n, n, n, n, n, n, n, n). In'Vagdi Kachi' there is only one implosive (b) a n d three nasals (m, n, n, n). 'Mandvi Kachi' is between these two Sub-dialects. This Sub-dialect contains two implosives (b, d) and four nasals (m, n, n, n).

0.4 Population of the Kachi speakers:

Kachi is not limited to Kutch only. According to the figure given by Grierson , the number of Kachi

^{1.} Grierson: Linguistic Survey of India; Vol. VIII, Part-1.pp. 188.

Speakers in the proper Kutch was 311000 and 180214

Kachi Speakers were out of Kutch. Thus the to total

number of the Kachi speakers in was 491214.

According to the Census of 1961, the number of Kachi
speakers, only in the present Gujrat States, is 341660.

0.5 Literature of Kachi :

Kachi is a Spoken dialect. It has no script, hence it does not possess much written literature. Grierson has mentioned two books namely, 'Kachi Kosha' (a dictionary) and 'Kachi Kavitas' (poems), but he - failed to see these books Shantibhai Acharya has given the list of following additional books.

Kacchi Kahevato by Anonymous

Kacchi Sukeni by Nanjiani

Kacchi Kahevato by Duleray Karani

Kacchi Bhasa ni Kavita by Sadu Krisandas

Kacchi Bhasa ni lipi by Thakur Narainji
ane Vyakaran Tulsidas.

The writer has come across the following additional books:

Kachi Sabdavali

Published in 1885, written by Prabhudas Pandya. It is a small Eachi-Gujrati dictionary, may be the same which has been referred to Grierson.

^{1.} Shentibhai Acharya: Segmental Phonemes of Kacchi Vidya (Journal) Vol. VII, No. 1 .

'Kachi Kisa Bavani and, .
'Harijan Batisi '

'Kachi Hindi

both written by Duleray Karani.

Written by Lelji Nanji Joshi.

It is an attempt to form a new Script for Kachi.

'Kachi Bolen ji Kriya'

Fritten by Magubul,

(Published in Karachi,
Pakistan). This book
contains Synonyms of
Kachi.

0.6 Bork available on Kachi Language:

The only notable work, which the writer knows, about the Eachi dialect is the description given by - Grierson in his 'Linguistic Survey of India.' He has treated Kachi as a dialect of Sindhi and in the Chapter on Sindhi Language, he has spared a few pages for Eachi.

0.7 Scope of the present work.

The present work provides a Comprehensive description of the phonology and the morphology of Eachi dialect. It also contains a brief account of the com - pound verb and the indeclinables which come under the scope of phrase structure and syntactical construction respectively. There are Eachi texts along with translation and Eachi lexicon.

The thesis has been divided into four parts, viz. Phonology, Morphology, Texts and Lexicon. The Phonology is divided into two sections: Segmental and Supra-Segmental. The Morphology has been put into - three sections, viz. Noun Morphology, Verb Morphology and Indeclinables. The texts are segmented upto the morphemic level. They contain liner and a free translation. The Lexicon contain all those Eachi - Lexical items which have occurred in the thesis including texts.

0.8 Data and informants:

Rachi is not the mother tongue of the writer.

Mence, the data has been collected from the informants who are native Kachi Speakers. The description is - mainly based upon the information given by Shri.
Jawaharlal Marainji Rajgore. However, help has been taken from Sarvashri, Vishinji Hiraji Maru, Madhav Joshi, Manalal Joshi and Velji Hanchore. The data consists of about 4000 Lexical items (including 400 verbs), 1000, sentences and 50 texts. The data has been collected at Eutch as well at Poona.

华华安安安安

^{1.} Writer's mother tongue is 'Standard Sindhi '.

PHOLOLOGY

CHAPTER

I

SEGMENTAL PHONOLOGY

The Inventory of the Segmental Phonemes: There are 33 segmental phonemes in Kachi: which include 10 vowels and 23 consonants. The inventory of the segmental phonemes is as follows:

AND CO.	100	.1		99-		96	1003 9457
	-			10.0	MARCH AN	15 TE	-
1000		-			NUMBER OF	er a:	数章
2001	E139E3	BELLEVILLE.		cours.		THICKNEY.	200,771

	Front	Central	Back
High	1		u
Lower-High	I		U
Higher-Mid	9		0
Mad		•	
Lower-Mid	8		0
Lover			

	10.0					
100	101903	MEZ ST	Carried Co.	To be a second	PROPERTY.	200
100	22H (3)	.2	COOR	E COED	ante	かま
300	通過因	ALTERNATION OF THE PARTY OF THE	ACCOUNTS OF	\$ 363 TOPOS (II)	CONTRACTOR OF THE	83

Stops	Labial	Alveo- Dental	Retro-	Palatal	Volar
vl.	р	t		c	k
vd.	b	đ	ġ.	1	g
Impl.	Б		ā		
Mosals	n	n	ņ		ń
fricaltives		8			h
laterals		1			
Vibrants		P	F		
Frictionless continuents		v		У	

1.2 Some phonetic and phonemic features:

1.2.1 Length

Length is not phonemic in the vowels. However, the vowels show two allophonic grades of length, i.e. half length [.] and full length [.]. The vowels / I / and / U / are always found short; the vowel / > / takes half length [.] only in the final position; the remaining vowels / i e s a o o u / take full length [.] in the mono-syllables ending with a consonant and half length [.] in all the other positions, e.g.

L'mentre.]	/ mentre /	'spell'
Lrais J	/ rag /	song t
L'ra.ja.]	/reja/	'king '

1.2.2 lip-rounding

The lip-rounding is not phonemic, as all the front and central vowels are un-rounded, while all the back vowels are rounded.

1.2.3 Nasalization

Nasalization is phonesic in the vowels, e.g. / 1 / 'he' / î / 'like that ' / so / 'snow', - / so / 'oath '. *.

^{*} Note: The details are given in the chapter 'Suprasegmental Phonology'

1.8 Classification of the Vowels:

The Vowels of Rachi, phonetically and struc turally can be put into two classes. The class 1, con sists of three vowels / I o U / and class 2 consists of
remaining seven vowels / i e 3 a o o u / . In comparison
to the vowels of class 2, the vowels of class 1 are phonetically short.

The vowels of both classes can be presented by the following graphs:

Class 1		Cla	88 8		
I		U		1	u
				e	
				8	9
					а

In the vowels of class 1, there is two-fold contrast in the tongue-hight, i.e. Lower-high (I, U) and Mid (>) whereas there is four-fold contrast in the vowels of class 2, i.e. High (i,u), Higher-Mid (e,o), Lower-Mid (3,o) and Low (a). From the point of view of the tongue position, both the classes, show three-fold contrast: front (I, i, e, 3), central (>, a) and back (u, o, o, u).

1.4 Vowel-Contrast:

	\$100 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)			
1.4.1	CAR THREE	\$3,40x \$7.5,56545393	THE PERSON AND PARTY OF THE PE	of class I
A 本作: 多本	THE REAL PROPERTY.	NAME OF TAXABLE	新学学(2) Mar July 10 July 10 4	THE REPORT OF THE PARTY OF THE

/ I = u /

Initial:

/In/ 'this'(obl.) /It/ 'brick'
/en/ 'grain' /eth/ 'eight'
/Un/ 'that'(Obl.) /uth/ 'camel'

Medial:

/mIni/ 'cat' /mIt/ 'cheek'
/mani/ 'having obeyed' /mith/ 'temple'
/mUni/ 'saint' /mUth/ 'clenched ham'

1.4.2 Contrast between the comparable vowels of class 2.

/1 e 3 a /

Initial:

'egg' /1nu/ 'northern' /isan/ /ekat/ 'solitude' /er1/ 'heel' /8r1/ 'like that'(f) 'favour' /dsan/ /aro/ 'end' /ekas/ 'sky'

Medial:

/khir/ *milk* 'brave' /vir/ 'who' /wer/ 'cut'(Imp.) /ver/ /ksr/ *when * /435/ 'enmity' /kher/ 'anger' /var/ 'hair'

Final:

/p1/	'drink'(Imp.)	/81/	'cold'
/pe/	'father'	/89/	fthose!
1581	'he may fall'	/88/	'he may bear'
/pa/	'one fourth'	/sa/	'breath'

/asou/

Initial:

/aro/	'end'	/ajar/	'trouble'
/oro/	'like that'(m)	/ojer/	'tool'
/oro/	'shadow'	/ogo/	'heap of grass'
/unu/	'deep'	/ujas/	'light'

Medial:

/paro/	'neighbour' hood	/seri/	'seri' (a garment)
/poro/	'wide'	/spro/	'father in law'
/poro/	'ball of mud'	/soro/	'sixteen'
/puro/	'complete'	/suro/	(varrior)

'begin'

/seru/

	Inal.		
/sale/	'advice'	/pa/	'one fourth'
/soro/	'father in law'	/po/	'dung'
/soro/	'sixteen'	/po/	'fall down' (Imp.)

/cu/

'chew' (Imp.)

1.4.3	Contrast	between	the	comparable	vowels of
		and class			

100/

Initial: 'difficult' 'name of a /agri/ /ak/ plant' ffire! 'stopper' /agr1/ /as/ Medial: /ger/ 'vein' /tera/ (pond 'stars' /rag/ "song" /tara/ Final: 1601 *two* /tetve/ 'element' /ba/ 'belief' tarm! /phatva/ /11/ Initial:

/It/ 'brick' /leha/ 'desire'
/id/ 'a festival of /ija/ 'pain'
mohmedans'

Medial:

/tlk/ 'stay'(Imp.) /llkh/ 'write'(Imp.)
/thik/ 'correct' /likh/ 'louse'

/ Uu/

Initial:

/Un/ 'he'(Obl.) /Ujay/ 'extinguish' (Imp.)
/un/ 'wool' /das/ 'light'

Medial:

/pUj/ 'reach'(Imp.) /sUr/ 'tone'
/puj/ 'worship' /sur/ 'pain'
(Imp.)

1101

Initial:

/Ini/ 'they'(Obl.) /Iti/ 'a wooden piece used for play'
/eni/ 'anvil' /eki/ 'make water'
Medial:

'write'(Imp.)

/kIr/ 'fall down' (Imp.)

/lekh/ 'count' (") /ker/

'who'

'near'

1001

Initial:

/likh/

/Utro/ 'that much' /Udo/ 'fly' (Imp.pl)

/otro/ 'northern' /odo/

Medial:

/kUro/ 'what' /mUr/ 'be bent' (Imp.)

/koro/ 'unused' /mor/ 'bend' (Imp.)

1.5 General phonetic description:

Except in the particular situations, which are mentioned in the section ' Allophonics (Vowels)',

the general phonetic description of the vowels is as follows:-

/1/	high, front unrounded.
/1/	lower-high, front, unrounded.
101	higher-mid, front, unrounded.
13/	lower-mid, front, unrounded.
191	mid, central, unrounded.
10/	low, central, unrounded.
101	lower-mid, back, rounded.
101	higher-mid, back, rounded.
101	lower-high, back, rounded.
/u/	high, back, rounded.
1,6	Allophonics (Vowels)
1.6.1	Vowels of Class 1 / I a U /
	/1/ [1', 1]

/ I / has two allophones: a slightly lower [I'] which occurs in the close syllables and [I] which occurs in the open syllables, e.g.

[it] /It / 'brick' [likh] /likh/ 'write'(Imp)
[kina.ro.] /kinaro/ 'shore' [bipor] / bipor/ 'noon'

101 [0.0]

/9/ has two allephones: a slightly higher and long Zo. Z which occurs in the final position, and Zo Z which occurs elsewhere, e.g.

Legar / Ledar 'two' Legar / total 'element'
Legar / Ledar 'value' Legar / tora / 'pond'

10/20,07

/U/ also has two allophones: a slightly lower one _U_7 which occurs in the close syllables and _U_7 which occurs elsewhere. The allophones of / I / and / U / are similar, e.g.

L'uja.y] /puj/ 'reach'(Imp.) L'ucka.r.] /Uckar/ 'sound'
L'uja.y] / Ujay/ 'extinguish' L'budo.] 'old.'
(Imp.)

1.6.2 Vowels of Class 2. / ie sabou/

all the vowels of class 2, show some common allophonic variants. They become longer-taking full length \angle : \angle in the mono-syllabic words ending with a consonant and remain long taking half length \angle . \angle in all other places.

/1/ [1:,1]
[1:kh] / likh / 'louse, [khi:r] /khir/ 'milk'
[1. ja.] / ija / 'pain' [hi.] / hi / 'this'

101 [es , e.]

[ke:r]/ker/ 'who' [pe:t]/pet/ 'belly'
[te.ro.]/tero/ 'thirteen' [pe.]/pe/ 'father'

131 [31, 3.]

[vir] /vir] 'enmity' [kir] / kir / 'when'
[ti.ro.] /tiro/ 'name of a [tri] /tri/ 'three'
village'

/a/[at , a.]

L'raig] / rag/ 'song' L'aig] /ag/ 'fire'
L'so.pa.ri] /sopari/ 'nut' L'ba.] /ba/ 'brother'

10/601,0.7

/u/ [u1, u.]

L'sur] / sur/ 'pain' L'pui] / puj/ 'worship' (Imp.)
L'su.roj] / suroj/ 'sun' L'voru.] / voru/ 'wolf'

1.7.1 Distribution.

1.7.1 Vowels of Class 1.

In comparison to the vowels of class 2, the vowels of class 1, have restricted distribution. I he vowels / I / and # U / of the class 1, do not occur in the word-final position. Though / > / occurs in the word-final position, it is limited to few Sanskrit - borrowed words like / mantra/ 'spell' /gadya/ 'prose'

etc., two numeris /ba/ 'two' /cha/ 'six' and four indeclinables i.e. /ja/ 'if' /ta/ 'that', /na/ 'no, not' /ma/ 'no,
not'.

In comparison to /9/, the vewels / I U / have less frequency in the initial position, specially in the mono-syllabic words.

The vowels / I / and . / U / are not nesalized.

/e/ can be nasalized in the environment in which it is not preceded or followed by a stop, e.g.

/hislo/ 'swan' /sielo/ 'rabit'

1.7.2 Vowels of class 2.

It has already been stated that the vowels of class 2, have wider distribution than the vowels of class 1 The vowels of this class can occur in all three positions, viz. initial medial and final, e.g.

/1ja/	'pain '	/11kh/	'louse'	/khali/	'empty'
/eri/	'heel'	/ker/	'who'	/ve/	'sit' (Imp.)
/spi/	'like that'	/v8r/	'enwity'	/tr=/	'three'
/ag/	'fire'	/rag/	'song'	/sa/	'breath'
/okho/	'difficult'	/poro/	'wide'	/40/	ten '
/oro/	'shadow'	/roj/	'daily'	/30/	'fault'
10/	'that'	/sur/	'pain'	/varu/	'wolf'

The vowels / o / and / o / are restricted to occur finally after a masal in the poly-syllabic words.

All the vowels of this class can be nasalized,

0.E.

/1/ 'he' /1/ 'like that'

/me/ 'buffalo' /me/ 'in'

/e3/ 'he may /s3/ 'he suffered'

/va/ 'wind' /va/ 'Imay be'

/khlyo/ 'you est' /khlyo/ 'we may est' (Imp.)

/so/ 'show' /so/ 'oath'

/cu/ 'chew'(Imp.) /gu/ 'excreta'

all the vowels of class?, are restricted to occur before the velsr nasal / n / when it occurs finally.

1.8 Vowel-Sequences.

The Vowel-sequences are found only in the medial and the final positions. However, it is possible to get the words which consist of only a vowel-sequence; e.g.

/91/ 'you' / au / 'l'

1.8.1 General limitations:

- There is no sequence of two mimilar vowels.

 Thus we do not get the sequences like a a, i i etc.
- enip do not occur in a sequence. Hence we do not find the sequences like i I, I i etc.
- a. The vowels of Class 1 (i.e. short vowels)
 do not occur together. The only exception is ou- in
 /vouru/' daughters-in-law'.
- 4. The vowels / I 3 p / do not occur in a n y vowel-sequence.

The vowels, having privilege of occurrence in the vowel-sequences, may occur as the first member or the second member of a vowel-sequence, e.g.

/porai/ 'wideness' /siaro/ 'winter'

Though vowel-sequences are found in the medial and the final positions, the majority of the sequences has been noted at the final position.

1.8.2 A Chart of the vowel-sequences:

A chart is given below, which indicates the occurrences and the non-occurrences of the vowel sequences.

The non-occurrences are indicated by 'x' or '-'. The sign 'x' is used in the place where non-occurrence is due to a general rule of limitation, while '-' is used where the non-occurrence is due to a particular restriction. The vowel-sequences given in the parenthesis, indicate the exceptions to the general rules of limitations.

The vertical order in the chart, suggests the first membership while the lateral order indicates the second membership.

	1	I	9	8	9	a	o	0	U	u
1	×	×	10	x	io	ia	×	io		1u
1	x	×	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
0	ei	×	×	×	•	•	z	-	•	eu
8	x	x	x	×	×	x	x	×	×	x
•	21	×	90	×	x	x	×	-	X (9U)	9u
a	ai	ж	80	×	x	x	x	80	aU	au
0	x	×	x	x	x	x	x	×	×	×
0	oi	x	00	×	•	08	x	x	-	ou
U	U1	x	Ue	×	x	Ua	×	Uo	×	×
u		×	ue	×	uə	ua	x	uo	×	×

1.8.3 Examples of the vowel-sequences:

Sequences:	Examples			
ie	/likhie/	'louse' (obl.)	/gražie/	'landlord' (obl)
ia	/karier/	'cobra'	/diara/	'days'
1a	/siaro/	'winter'	/bojis/	'pakodi'
10	/likhio/	'louse'	/dotio/	'dhoti' (a cloth)
iu	/410/	'daughters'	1	
e1	/trei/	'twentythr	ee'	
eu	/geū/	'wheat'		
91	/lepu/	'white	/chei/	'twenty
90	/vae/	'(it)may flow'	/see/	'(he)may bear'
Ue	/vəUru/	'daughters	-in-law'	
9 u	/veu/	'bride'	/gau/	'dow'
ai	/benaibo/	'(we)shall make'	/5a1/	'mother'
ae	/ognaesi/	'seventy	/khae/	'(he)may
ao	/dao/	'vise'	/khao/	'eat' (Imp.Pl.)

Sequences:	Examples:			
aU	/maUru/	fmothers		
au	/saukar/	'rich'	/komau/	'earning man'
o1	/001/	'twenty four'	/401/	'wooden ladle'
00	/bce/	'worship	per' (obl.)	
oa	/pos/	'after'	/boa/	'worshippers'
ou	/pirou/	'downs'	/gour	'monitors'
UL	/101/	(blood'	/sU1/	'needle'
Ue	/mUo/	'dead' (obl.)	/bUe/	'worshipper' (obl.)
Ue	/kUar1/	'axe'	/b Ua/	'worehippers'
ue	/marue/	'persons (obl.)	/verue/	'wolves' (obl.)
tue	/sunz/	'swine'		
ua	/sUruat/	'begi- nning'	/bua/	'worshippers'
uo	/buo/	'worshi	- /duo/	'smoke'

1.9	Conso ant Contrast	1	
1.9.1	Contrast between t	he comparable	consonants:
	/ p	b/	
	Initial:		
/polo/	' a kind of fish'	/per/	'last year'
/bolo/	' good' (m)	/red/	'fill ' (Imp.)
	Medial:		
/khapo/	'wooden eleeper'	/kapro/	'eloth'
/khabo/	'shoulder'	/jebro/	'strong'
	Final:		
/sep/	'snake'	/map/	'measure'
/dea/	'all'	/ab/	'sky'
	/ t	a/	
	Initial:		
/taro/	'lock'	/tir/	'arrow'
/daro/	'dacoity'	/dir/	'patient'
	Medial:		
/rati/	'red' (f)	/keter/	' scissors'
/red1/	'useless'	/keder/	'value'
	Final:		
/rot/	'blood'	/mat/	'vote'
/rod/	'Cook'(Imp.)	/mad/	'honey'

money

1: 01

/tar/	'send away' (Imp.)	/\$011/	'group'
/gar/	'pour' (")	/gol1/	'drummer'
	Medial:		
/ket1/	'having cut'	/oto/	'platform'
/ked1/	'having taken'	/odo/	'a name'
	Finel:		
/ket/	*eut*(Imp.)	/kot/	'fort'
/kad/	'take out' (Imp.)	/kod/	'leprosy'
	/ e :	/	
	Initial:		
/eer/	'graze' (Imp.)	/ciro/	'cut'
/302/	'water'	/3120/	'living'
	Medial:		
/geenu/	'to be fixed'	/8901/	'correct'(f).
/gajnu/	'to roar'	/8931/	'full' (f)
	Final:		
/gse/	'much'	/200/	'worry'
/803/	'roar'(Imp.)	/roj/	'daily'

1 kg/

	Initial:		
/karo/	'black'	/kar/	'do' (Imp#)
/garo/	'mud'	/gar/	*house*
	Medial:		
/akri/	'strong'	/skel/	'wisdom'
/agri/	'stopper' (Int. Pl.)	/ gege/	'foolish'
	Final:		
/cak/	'calk'	/89%/	'doubt'
/cag/	'love for child'	/rag/ /	'vein'
	Explosives /	Implosives	
	/ 5 5	1	
	Initial:	5 2 7 7	
/ber/	'fill'(Imp.)	/bar/	'weight'
/507/	'strength'	/bar/	'burn' (Imp.)
	Medial:	/bate?	
/obro/	'weak'	/gebo/	'calf'
/oggo/	'a name'.	/khabo/	two)shall eat'
	Final:		
/der/	'God'	/kharab/	'bad '
/ro5/	'cooked rice '	/gUla5/	'rose'

/ 9 3 /				
	Initial:			
/der/	'heap'	/dole/	'ckover'(lep.)	
/dor/	'husband's brother'	/dot/	*burry *(")	
	Medial:			
/6Ugo/	'old'	/Rege/	'(he)tooks out'	
/60Jo/	'sink' (Imp.Fl.)	/ka de/	*when *	
	Final:			
15031	'forta	/pev/	'cut' (Imp.)	
\khad/	'pit'	\bea\	'call'	
1.9.2	Contrast in the man	ner of ar	ticulation.	
	/ p b b i	n v /		
	Initial:			
/por/	'lest your'	/par/	'bring up'(Imp.	
/500/	'fill' (Imp.)	/bar/	'weight'	
/502/	'strongth'	/ber/	'born'(Imp.)	
/mar/	'die'(Imp.)	tmar/	'M11' (")	
/43E/	'husband'	/ver/	'hair'	

Hedial:

/genes/	'generous'	/leges/	(wood)
/medem/	'patience'	/khabo/	'shoulder'
/00 Bor/	'atrong'	/кобо/	*(we)shall

/semes/	'war'	/lemu/	'far'
/Saver/	'name of a tree'	/tovo/	'griddle'
	Finel:		
/esp/	'lip'	/pap/	'sin'
/rab/	'God'	/kharab/	'bad'
/r=5/	'cooked rice'	/gulab/	'rose'
/ram/	'play'(Imp.)	/hajam/	'barber'
/ver/	'sound'	/bacav/	'safty'
	/ ta	nsri/	
	Initial:		
/tor/	'swim'(Imp.)	/taro/	'look'
/dor/	'door'	/dero/	'decoity'
		/ naro/	'belt'
/nor/ / sər/	'pond'		'sari'(garment)
/rar/	'ory'	/raja/	'king'
/log/	'fight'(Imp.)	#lado/	'bride-groom'
	Medial:		
/gati/	'seng'(f)	/koti/	'having spun'
/vad1/	'increase'	/rodi/	'having cooked'
/vani/	'ashes'	/von1/	'heving gone'
/vas1/	'inhabitant'	/vesi/	'having rained'
/vari/	'of' (f)	/vor1/	'having returned'
/vali/	'levable' (f)	/veli/	'having ploughed'
	Final:		
/rat/	'night'	/rot/	'blood'
/vad/	'increase'	/rod/	'ecok' (Imp.)

/van/	'vehicle'	/ren/	'widow'
/vas/	'inhabitation'	/res/	'taste'
/ver/	'hair'	/ver/	'husband'
/vel/	'yard'	/vo1/	'plough'(Imp.)

/ \$ 4 d n r /

Initial:

/ter/	'go away'(Imp.)	/ter/	'send away' (Imp.)
/gor/	*be poured*	/dar/	'pour' (Imp.)
/der/	'den'	/dar/	'pulse' (seeds)

Medial:

'knit'(Imp.)

/mor/

	[13] [13] [13] A. (14] A. (15] A. (15] [15] [15] [15] [15] [15] [15] [15] [
/voti/	'having twisted'	/lesto/	'strong'(m)
/ved1/	'having cut'	/lsado/	'take out' (Imp. pl.)
/tpev/	'big' (f)	/vado/	'big' (m)
/veni/	'having woven'	/ken1/	'a small particle'
/ver1/	'a dish made of pulse'	/kero/	'ring'
	Final:		
/met/	'jar'	/ket/	'cut'(Imp.)
/m=0/	*dead body*	/kad/	'take out'(Imp.)
\pen\	'a pair of clothe	\bean\'	'pit'
/gem/	'maund'(weight)	/khon/	'lift' (Imp.)

/car/

'elimb' (")

	/e 3 y	1	
	Initial:		
/car/	'four'	/earap/	'madness'
/jar/	'name of a tree'	/jeset/	'gine'
/yar/	'friend'	/yəvən/	'foreigner'
	Medial:		
/900/	'come'(Imp.pl.)	/daco/	'jaw'
/ojo/	'shelter'	/vejo/	'a musical instrument'
/000/	'you are'	/ayo/	'came'(m)
	Final:		
/200/	'much'	/kac/	'glass'
/ve3/	'ring'(Imp.)	/raj/	'kingdom'
/vey/	'age'	/ray/	'king of Kutch'
	/kg n	h /	
	Intetal		
mant	Initial:	from !	In complete

/kar/	'do'(Imp.)	/kar/	'work'
/ger/	thouse t	/gar/	'abuse'
/ner/	'God Shiv'	/har/	'garland'
	Medial:		
/cok1/	'floor-mill'	/daknu/	'to cover'
/1961/	'struck' (f)	/legnu/	'to strike'
/roni/	'having painted'	/ro nnu/	'to paint'
/rokhi/	'having put'	/rakhmu/	'to put'

	Final:		
/38/	'name of a tree'	/bok/	'gabble'(Imp.)
/308/	'world'	/log/	'strike'(")
/on/	'body'	/mem/	'beg' (")
/akh/	'eye'	/rəkh/	'put' (")
1.9.8	Contrast in the p	oint of erti	culation.
	/pt	tek/	
	Initial:		
/per/	'last year'	/par/	'fulfil' (Imp.)
/tor/	'swim' (Imp.)	/ter/	'pass over (")
/tor/	'go away' (Imp.)	/tar/	'send away'
/002/	'grage' (")	/car/	'four'
/kar/	1001 (11)	/kar/	'work'
	Medial:		
/kapi/	'having eut'	/kopnu/	'to cut'
/kot1/	'having spun'	/ke tnu/	'to spin'
/kat1/	'having cut'	/katnu/	'to cut'
/kei/	'rav' (f)	/geenu/	'to be fixed'
/coki/	'floor-mill'	/bakmu/	'to gabble'
	Finel:		
/lesp/	'eut' (Imp.)	/ges/	'snake'
/ket/	'spin' (")	/set/	'seven'
/ket/	'eut' (")	/201/	'run'

/soc/

'truth'

1900/

'much'

	Initial:		
/bo3/	'rum away'(Imp.)	/bor/	'fill '(Imp.)
/603/	'very good'	/dor/	'door'
/dak/	'cover'(Imp.)	/dor/	'be poured'(Imp.)
/303/	'judge'	/302/	'water'
1893/	'roar' (Imp.)	/goz/	'house'
	Medial:		
/19b1/	'having found'	/labnu/	'to find'
/red1/	'having cooked'	/rednu/	'to cook '
/thev/	'having cut'	/va@nu/	'to cut'
/8931/	'full'(f)	/vejnu/	'to ring'
/sng1/	'true'(f)	/10gpu/	'to strike'
	(not step)		
	Pinel:		
/deq/	10001	/bed/	'any sweets given to a child'
/rod/	'cook'(Imp.)	/jad/	'rememberance'
/0ev/	'eut' (")	/gad/	'strong'
/203/	'be cooked'(Imp.)	/baj/	'eagle'
/rng/	'vein'	/bag/ .	'garden'
	18 41		
	Initial:		
/50r/	'strength'	/bori/	'having heated'
/der/	'den'	/dor1/	'having feared'

Medial:

/kabo/ '(we)shall do' /cabi/ 'having chewed'
/gado/ 'cart' /chadi/ 'having left'

Final:

/rab/ 'cooked rice' /dUb/ 'be shaken' (Imp.)

/snd/ 'call' /bUd/ 'sink'(Imp.)

/mnnn/

Initial:

/man/ 'obey'(Imp.) /mar/ 'die'(Imp.)
/nam/ 'bow down'(Imp.) /nar/ 'male'

Medial:

/nemi/ 'having bowed /nemnu/ 'tobow down'

/mani/ 'having obeyed' /mannu/ 'to obey'
/mapi/ 'pearl' /gannu/ 'to count'

/moni/ 'having begged' /monnu/ 'to beg'

Final:

/nom/ 'bow down' (Imp.) /kom/ 'work'

/man/ 'maund'(weight) /kan/ 'particle'

/man/ 'beg' (Imp.) /an/ 'body'

/sh/

Initial: /sathi/ 'companion' /set/ 'run' /hathi/ 'elephant' /hot/ 'shop' Medial: /ekseth/ 'sixty one' /nekso/ 'map' /okhar/ 'dryness' /nekhod/ 'destruction' Medial: /taro/ 'star' /vari/ 1051(5) /taro/ 'lock' /var1/ 'garden' Final: 'graze'(Imp.) /vor/ *husband* /cor/ 'climb' (") / cer/ /vor/ 'name of a tree'

1.9.4	Contrast	between a phot	neme and	its absence.
/p/	/poro/	'ball of mud'	/map/	'messure'
	/oro/	'shadow'	/ma/	'mother'
141	/taro/	'star'	/vat/	'mouth'
	/aro/	'end'	/va/	* wind *
/\$/	/tar/	'send away'	/vat/	'road'
	/ar/	'needle of a top'	/va/	f wind f
/e/	/cã/	'Imay say'	/800/	'think'(Imp.)
	/ã/	'you' (pl)	/80/	'show'
/k/	/karo/	'black'(m)	/cak/	'calk'
	/ero/	'end'	/ca/	'tea'
101	/bo3/	'run away' (Imp.)	/sab/	'master'
	103/	'to day'	/88/	'breath'
101	/dar/	'trunk'	/eãd/	'moon'
	/9F/	'stick' (Imp.)	/ca/	' I may say'
191	/dak/	'cover'	/gad/	'strong'
	/4k/	'name of a plant'	/ga/	'wound, grass'
/3/	/jadu/	'magic'	/baj/	hawk "
	/adu/	'ginger'	/08/	'brother'

/g/	/g1d/	'vulture'	/eag/	'love'
	/10/	'a festival of Muslims'	/ ca/	'tea'
161	/Bar/	'out'		
	/ar/	'needle of	a top!	
191	/doro/	'thread'	/eha@/	'leave'(Imp.)
	/oro/	'e dish of brinjal	/ehə/	'six'
/m/	/machi/	'fish'	/vem/	'left;opposite side.
	/sch1/	'white'	/va/	'wind'
/n/	/nalo/	'name'	/mem/	'obey'(Imp.)
	/alo/	'wet'	/ma/	'no'
/n/	/kani/	'particle'	/ehan/	'fall'(Imp.)
	/ke1/	'dia'(f)	/cha/	'six'
/n/	/muni/	'having begged'	/mon/	'beg'(Imp.)
	/mu1/	'died' (f)	/m>/	'no'
121	/rag/	'song'	/var/	'hair'
	/ag/	'fire'	/va/	'wind'
191	/sari/	'sari'	/sar/	'spoil'(Isp.)
	/sai/	'green'(f)	180/	'breath'
/1/	/lokh/	'lac'	/sal/	'year'
	/akh/	'eye'	/88/	'breath'

/8/	/seg/	'vegetable'	/vas/	'habitation'
	/eg/	'fire'	/va/	'wind'
/h/	/har/	'defeat'	/akh/	'eye'
	/er/	'needle of a top'	/sk/	'name of a plant'
131	/yar/	'friend'	/ssy/	'help'
	/ar/	'needle of s top'	/88/	'breath'
/٧/	/var/	'hair'	/sav/	'absolute'
	/ar/	'needle of a top'	/88/	'breath'

1.10 General phonetic description;

Except in the particular situations, which are described in the section 'Allophonics (consonants)', the general description of the consonant phonemes is as follows:

1.10.1 Stops:

In the stops, there is five-fold contrast in the place of articulation (i.e. labial, alveodental, retroflex, palatal and veler) and two-fold contrast in the manner of articulation (i.e. un-voiced and voiced). In addition to this, there are two implosives; one is labial and other is retroflex. The voice is not pertinent to the implosives as they are always voiced.

The following graphs indicate the relationship between the stops:

1.10.2 Voiceless stops: /pttck/

/p/, /t/, /t/, and /k/ are respectively bilabial, dental, retroflex and velar stops. /c/ phonetically is palatal affricate / to 7. However, it is classified along with the stops, because the friction following the stop is slight and immediate. Besides, the structural pattern of the affricate / to 7 is alike to the stops. Moreover, Eachi does not contain the contrast between the stops and the affricates. Hence, the friction after the stop articulation, has been treated as a phonetic feature of the stop.

1.10.3 Voiced stops: /badjg/

/b/, /d/, /d/ and /g/ are respectively, bilabial, dental, retroflex and velar voiced stops. /j/ phonetically, is voiced affricate L'd _7. It is the center phoneme of /c/. The reasons for considerring affricates as the stops are already stated.

1.10.4 Implosives: /6 a/

Kachi has two implosives: a bilabial /b/ and the retroflex /d/. The implosives are always voiced, hence there is no unvoiced-voiced contrast in the implosives.

1.10.5 Nasels: / mnn n/

There are four nesal phonemes in Eachi. /m/
is bilabial, /n/ is part dental, /n/ is retroflex and
/n/ is velar. There is no palatal masal phoneme and
thus, we find a pattern-blank in the palatal series.

1.10.6 Continuants: /shlrrvy/

/s/ is un-voiced, dental fricative, /h/ is
part velar, voiced fricative; /l/, /r/ and /r/ all are
voiced. /l/ is lateral and /r/ is weakly trilled sound.

Both belong to the alveola region. /r/ is retraflex flap.
/v/ and /y/ are frictionless continuants. /v/ is labiodental and /y/ is palatal.

Except /s/, all other continuants are voiced; but the voice is not pertinent to them, as they have no ur-voiced counter phonemes.

- 1.11 Allophonics: (Consonants)
- (1) All the stops and the masals have the following common allophones:
- (a) They become fortis when occur finally in the mono-Syllables, preceded by any vowel of class-1.
- of class-1 (i.e. the short vowels) and followed by the vowels vowels of class-2 (i.e. the long vowels).

(c) They remain normal (i.e. lenis and not lengthy)
in the other positions.

Here are the examples of all the stops and the masal phonemes:

/kat.o. 7 /kato/ 'strong' /kut.i. 7 /kuti/ 'having crumbled'

[ko:t] /kot/ 'fort' [kotnu.] /kotnu/ 'to cut'

10/

Lesc] /gae/ 'much' Lesc] /sac/ 'truth' [kee.i.]/keei/ 'raw'(f) [sec.o.]/seco/ 'true'(m) 'read' [nacnu.] /nacnu/ 'to dance' [vaic] /vac/ (Imp.) 181 Znak / /nak/ 'nose' Zthuk / /thuk/ 'salivate' (Imp.) 'grind- [pak.o.] /pako/ 'strong' _dak.i.]/caki/ L'ro:k] /rok/ 'detain' L'ro.knu.] /roknu/ 'to detain' 101 [rob] /rob/ 'God' [jib] /jib/ 'tongue' [kab.u.1] /kabul/ 'accept' [khab.o.] /khabo/ 'shoulder' (Imp.) L'saib] /sab/ 'master' /kebulnu.] /kebulnu/'to accept /d/ 'cook' [mad] /mad/ 'honey' L'rad / /rad/ Zrad.1. 7 /red1/ 'having Zad.a. 7 /ada/ 'father' /kho:d7 /khod/ 'dig' /kho.dnu/ /khodnu/'to dig'

1800 J	/gad/	'fort'	∠eund_7	/cund/	'select' (Imp.)
∠kad.o7	/kado/	'take out(Imp.)	ZE-9.1.7	/kagi/	'having teken out'
∠ko:0_7	/kod/	'leprosy'	/Reanu_7	/kadnu/	'to take out'
∠603_7	/ba\$/		7. E13.7	/B13/	'saed'
(E>1.1.]	/2011/	'having roared'	Era.ja. 2	/raja/	'king'
Lba:3_7	/baj/	'vulture'	Zunteg7	\united\	'to run avay'
		181			
Ling]	/pog/	'vein'	Last L	13081	'world'
Zrug.i.7	/rugi/	'only'(f)	Linged]	/sag1/	'true'(f)
Ling.	/rag/	'song'	Comme I	/lagnu/	'to strike'
		/6/			
ZF95/	/r=5/	'cooked rice!	Z815_7	/slb/	'sev' (Imp.)
∠k.o.7	/юбо/	'we shall do'	/815.1.7	/s151/	'having sewed'
Laulo.5_7	/gulab/	'rose'	∠ño1807	/ha150/	'We) shall

/d/

/sod/ 'eall' [bud] /bud/ 18007 'sink' (Imp.) [bud.i.]/budi/ 'sinked(1)/gad.o] /gado/ , 'cart' Lo.co. 7 /odo/ 'near' 'grand father' Z da.do. //dado/ /m/ [kam] /kam/ 'work' Zsum_7 'sleep' /eum/ (Imp.) [sum.i.]/sumi/ 'having Zlam.u. 7 /lamu/ 'far' slept' Lraim] /ram/ 'a name' [rampu.] frampu/ 'to play' /n/ _Un_ / Un/ 'that'(Ubl.) Lkon_7 /kan/ 'ear' Lean.u. / /sanu/ 'thin'(m) /cun.u_7 /cunu/ 'lime' Lanin] /san/ 'buffalo' /mannu. / /mannu/ 'to obey' /n/ /man/ 'maund' Zkhan] /khan/ [men.] 'lift' (1mp.) Zean.u. 7 /canu/ 'gram' /phan.i. //phani/ 'comb' Lam/7 /an/ 'bring' /khappu. / /khappu/'to take' (Imp.)

for the con / h / attendement, the to pote that

[man] /man/ 'beg'(Imp.) [mun] /mun/ 'gram'
[man.1.]/mani/ 'having [ran.1.] /rani/ 'having painted'

[mannu. 7 /mannu/ 'to beg' [ri.nna.7/rinna/ 'brinjals'

(ii) The voiced stops / b d d j g / freely takes slight aspiration, specially in the initial position, e.g.

L ber-ber J /ber/ 'fill' (Imp.)

C du.nu - du.nu. J /dunu/ 'to wash'

L da:1 -da:1 J /dal/ 'sheild'

L ja:r -ja:r J /jar/ 'tree'

C ger-ger J /ger/ 'house'

(111) /g/ Some times occurs in free variation with non-phonemic implosive [g] e.g.

L bagat-bagat-bagat / /bagat/ 'worshipper'
L bagti.-bagti.- bagti. / /bagti/ 'worship'

(iv) /d/ has de-voiced allophone [d] which occurs in the final position when it is preceded by a long vowel, e.g.

[khe id] /khed/ 'sorrow' [vai.d] /vaid/ 'doctor'

- (v) /n/ has two other allophones. One is palatal nasal [n] which occurs along with only homo-organic stops: and other is syllable [n]] which occurs between two consonants, e.s.,
- I pone I / pane / 'arbitra- [poni] /poni/ 'fivo'
- [helndo 7/helndo/ '(he)will [bejnda. 7/bejnda/'they will move'
- (v1) /n/ has an allophone [] 7 which occurs between the vowels, e.g.,
- Zer.e. 7/game/ (he) / har.e. 7 /hame/ 'he struck'
- (vii) /d/ is post dental [d'] when it is followed by dental /d/ in the same syllable, e.g.,
- [dusd] /dud/ 'milk'
- (viii) /y/ in the initial position, freely varies with /j/, e.g.,
- Lyo.gya.-jo.gya.] / yogyaf 'suitable'
 Lyon jam J /yom/ 'God of Death'
- (ix) In the few cultural items, /s/ is in freevarition with [s], e.s.
- Z sa.nti.-śa.nti. Z /santi/ 'pence'
 Z denu.s -denu.ś Z /denus/ 'bow'

(x) /h/ has two allophones:

Zh Z Voiceless in the medial and final position.

ZA_7 Voiced in the initial position, e.g.

/rakhndo. / /rakhndo/ '(he) will put'

Lakh 7 /akh/ 'eye'

_Rel_7 /hel/ 'move' (Imp.)

1.12 Distribution:

nants occur in all three positions, i.e. initial, medial and final. The consonants / n n r / occur only in the medial and the final positions. The following list provides the illustration.

/pan/ 'leaf' /par/ 'last year' 101 /keps/ 'cotton' /kepi/ 'copy' /eop/ 'lip' /800/ 'snake' /taro/ 'star' 'arow' /t/ /tir/ /rati/ 'red' /mato/ 'sign' /ret/ 'blood' /mot/ 'vote' /tar/ 'go away' /tolo/ 151 'louse' /mIti/ 'dust' /kato/ 'strong' /sat/ 'run' /mot/ 'jar' /eiro/ 'cut' /com/ 'skin' /c/ /saci/ 'true' /kaco/ 'row' /mac/ 'fire' /gac/ 'much'

11/	/karo/	'black'	/men/	'work'
	/pako/	'ripe'	/akr1/	'strong'
	/eak/	'bite'	/nak/	'nose'
101	/belo/	'good'	/bo/	'worshipper'
	/khabo/	'shoulder	'/jebro/	'strong'
	/rob/	"God"	/kharab/	'bad'
101	/der/	'door'	/daro/	'dacoity'
	/redi/	'useless'	/thedo/	'cold'
	/ber/	'cook' (Imp.)	/thed/	'cold'
191	/dak/	'cover'	/dol1/	'drummer'
	/budo/	told'	/kendo/	'thorn'
	/ged/	'fort'	/sund/	'ginger'
/3/	/jer/	'water'	/315/	'tongue'
	/930/	'shelter'	/āji/	'your'
	1031	'to-day'	/B13/	'seed'
/8/	/gor/	'house'	/gar/	'abuse'
	/jaga/	'place'	/sago/	'true'
	/rag/	'song'	/bag/	'gardem'
161	/bar/	'strength	'/bar/	'burn'(Imp.)
	/kabo/	'(ve) shall	1 /halbo/	'(we) shall move'
	/re5/	'cooked	/gulab/	'rose'

131	/dor/	'den'	/der/	'hasband's brother'
	/obev/	'big'	/leage/	'when'
	/590/	'call'	/khad/	'pit'
/m/	/mon/	'mind'	/ma/	'mother'
	/19ma/	'far'	/same/	'before'
	/kem/	'work'	/com/	'skin'
/n/	/nok/	'nose'	/natok/	'drama'
	/seni/	'thin'	/unu/	'deep'
	/ken/	'enr'	/mem/	'mind'
/n/	/meni/	'pearl'	/kanu/	'one-eyed'
	/man/	'maund'	\mens	'11ft'(Imp.)
101				
	/moni/	'having' begged'	/rinna/	'brinjals'
	/mun/	'gram'	/sin/	'horn'
181	/s=t/	'run'	/sath/	'sixty'
	/vasi/	'inhabi- tant'	/byasi/	'eighty-two'
	/mos/	'flesh'	/las/	'dead-body'
/h/	/her/	'garland'	/hoth/	'hand'
	/hathi/	'elephant	'/matho/	'head'
	/hoth/	'hand'	/noth/	'nose-ring'

/1/	/lokh/	'lac'	/lab/	'profit'
	/walnu/	'to plough'	/seplo/	'snake'
	/v=1/	'creeper'	/h=1/	'move'(Imp.)
/1/	/rat/	'night'	/rət/	'blood'
	/veri/	'of'(f)	/karo/	'black'
	/var/	'hair'	/rev/	'husband'
121				
	/vari/	'garden'	/sari/	'sari' (garment)
	/ver/	'name of a tree'	/let/	'right' (Imp.)

- (ii) The velar nasal /n/, in the final position, is not preceded by any vowel of class-2.
- stop and aspiration is considered as a unitary aspirated phonemes. will un-necessarily increase the inventory of the segmental phonemes by adding five aspirated phonemes / ph, th, th, ch, kh/.

- (b) If we treat In I as a phonetic feature of a stop in the medial and the final position, the phoneme /h/, from the distribution point of view, would be defective, at i.e. not occurring in the medial and the final positions.
- (c) The main and the important reason is this, that
 the distribution of the simple stops and the aspirated stops
 (i.e. the stops + h) is not similar. For example, a
 cluster of two simple stops is possible but it is not possible
 in the case of aspirated stops. Similarly in the initial
 position, a cluster of a simple stop and non-stop sound is
 possible, while the cluster of aspirated stops, in this
 position, is not possible.

1.18 Consonant-clusters:

1.13.1 Formation of the consonent-clusters:

- (1) Most of the consonant-clusters are across the Syllabic and morphemic boundaries.
- (ii) The clusters of non-stops are more frequent than the clusters of stops. Among stops, the cluster of voiced stops have less frequency than the clusters of unvoiced stops.
- (111) The maximum number of the consonants within a cluster is four, and that also on the morphemic boundary. Within a marpheme, the number of the consonants is limited to three.

- within a body of a morphome, normally contain one stop sound, as the second member of the cluster and two non-stop sounds preceeding and following the stop sound. However, it is possible to get two stop sounds in a three-consonant cluster if they are on the morphomic boundaries. One restriction is, however, there and that is, the stop sound can not occur as the third member of the cluster; it may occur as the first or the second member of the cluster.
- (v) In the clusters of four consonants, the third member of the cluster is always the syllabic dental masal _n _7 and the fourth member is always / -d-/. In the first two members of the clusters, one normally is non-stop sound, e.g.

(vi) The clusters of two similar consonants are not found within a morpheme. However, it is possible to get such clusters on the morphemic boundaries, e.g.

/sib-bo/ '(we)shall sew' /khan-nu/ 'to lift'

- (vii) The voiced stops do not occur in the clusters with un-voiced consonents.
- (viii) /h/, as the first member, does not occur in a consonant-cluster. As the second or third member, it always occurs after the voiceless stops. e.g.

/phel/ 'fruit' /senkh/ 'conch'

- (ix) The consonants / j b n n y / occur, as the second member, with almost all the consonants.
- (x) The retroflex implosive /d/ and the velar nasal /n/ are not found, as the second member, in any consonant cluster.
- (xi) The consonants / r r 1 / occur, as the first as well as second member, with most of the consonants.

1.13.2 Distribution of the consonant clusters:

1.13.2.1 Initial clusters:

The initial clusters are not many and they are limited to two consonants, of which the second member of the cluster should be a non-stop sound. The first member of the cluster may be a stop or a non-stop, e.g.

/phel/ 'fruit' /trs/ 'three' /nyar/ 'look'(Imp.) /enayu/ 'nerve'

The following clusters have been noted in the initial position:

/prothvi/ 'land' /pratima/ 'prayer' PP-'he) fell down' 'cause to /pyo/ /pyar/ руdrink (Imp) /phani/ 'comb' /phol/ 'fruit/ ph-'drip'(Imp.) 'three' /trim/ tra /tre/ 'cold' /thor/ 'layer' /thed/ th-

th-	/ther/	'be cold'	/thelo/	'emptju'
ey-	/cyo/	(Imp.)	/cyō/	'(we) told'
ch-	/eho/	'eix'	/ehu/	'touch'(Imp.)
kr-	/krur/	'eruel'	/krurte/	'eruelty'
kh-	/khan/	'lift' (Imp.)	/kher/	'anger'
dr-	/dra/	'fear'		
dv-	/dvar/	'door'	/dvip/	'island'
gr-	/grasiyo/	'landlord'		
Бу-	/byo/	'another'	/byas1/	'eighty-two'
āy-	/gyo/	'give' (Imp.Pl.)	/dyar/	'cause to give'
ny-	/nyar/	'look' (Imp	.)	
sn-	/snayu/	'nerve'		
ev-	/svarthi/	'selfish'		
ry-	/190/	'remained'		
vy-	/vyar/	'cause to sit(Imp.)		'trouble'

1.13.2.2 Final chaters:

also not many. Most of them contain only two consonants.

However, there are a few three-consonant clusters also.

Hormally, every cluster contains one stop sound which may be the first or the second member of the cluster. If the stop sound is the first member of a cluster, the cluster would be limited to two consonants and the second member of such clusters is always /h/. But if the stop sound is the second member the second member of a cluster, the first member would be a

homo-organic masal and if the cluster is of three consonants, the third member would be /h/. Two examples are found in which there is no stop sound.

The following clusters have been noted in the final position:

(a)	Two-consonant clusters:				
-ph	/kaph/	'cough'	/saph/	'clean'	
-mp	/kemp/	'thrill'			
-mb	/11mb/	'besmear'			
-th	/he th/	'hand'	/ath/	'herd'	
-nt	/sont/	'saint'			
-nd	/sond/	'joint' (Imp.)	/dana/	'tooth'	
-th	/puth/	'back'	/moth/	'silence'	
-nt	/gent/	'bell'			
-nd	/euna/	'select' (Imp.)	/sund/	'ginger'	
-eh	/puch/	'tail'	/rich/	'bear'	
-ne	/pane/	'arbiter'			
-nj	/penj/	'five'	/eunj/	'beak'	
-kh	/akh/	'eye'	/makh/	'fly'	
-ńk					
-ng	/khang/	'cough'			
-ns	/hens/	'swen'			
-re	/akers/	'atract' (Imp.)		
(6)	Three cor	sonant-clus	tersi		
-nth	/Hanth/	'neck'	/gonth/	'Joint'(Imp.	

1.13.2.8 Medial clusters:

Many of the consonant clusters are medial. The medial clusters may contain two, three or four consonants. Many of the consonant clusters, in the medial position, have been found on the morphemic boundaries. In the following lists of consonant clusters, the list ' A ' contains those clusters which have been found within a morpheme and the list ' B ' consists of those clusters which have been noted on the morphemic boundaries. If a cluster has been found at both the places viz. within a morpheme and on the morphemic boundaries, it is given in both the lists. But if a cluster has been observed only at one place, i.e. either within a morpheme or on the morphemic boundaries, it is given in the related list and the counter ries, it is given in the related list and the counter space in the other list is left blank to indicate its absence in the data

	(A)		(B)
-pt-	/trlpti/	'contemment'	
-pt-	/uptido/	'(he)will open'	*
-pe-	/popeo/	'eye-lid'	•
-pd-		/dupdan1/	'censer'
-p3+		/khapja/	'be consumed' (Fut.Imp.Pl.)
-pg-		/apgat/	'suicide'
-pō-	•	/khapbo/	'(we)shall be consumed'
-pn-		/mapnu/	'to measure'

	(A)			(B)
-ph-	/napho/	'profit'		•
-p1-	/topli/	'basket'	/seplo/	'snake'
-pr-	/topro/	'the kernel of a cecea- nut'		
-pr/	/kopro/	'cloth'		•
-py-	/Upyog1/	'useful'		•
-tj-			/cetja/	'awake' (Fut.Imp.Fl.)
-tg-	•		/satganu/	'seven-fold'
-t6-	•		/estão/	'(we) shall awake'
-tn-			/cetnu/	'to awake'
-tr-	/kotrido/	'(he) will carve'		•
-tr-	/totro/	'stemmering	•	-
-tv-	/tetve/	'element'		-
-ty-			/gotyo/	'searched'
-tk-	/vetko/	*bowl*		-
-tb-			/phutbal/	'foot-ball'
-tj-			/khatja/	'you win' (fut.Imp.Pl.)
-t5-	•		/notbuk/	'note-book'
-tn-	/cetni/	'sauce'	/kotnu/	'to cut '
-\$n-	/mlthi/	'sweet'(f)		-
-t1-	/ketl1/	'kettle'		•
-57-	/dīţţi/	'nipple'		
-ty-			/letyo/	'laid'

	(A)			(8)	
-ek-	/plekari/	'pump'		•	
-cm-			/pacmu/	'fifth'	
-cp-			/senu/	'to come'	
-ch-	/mehi/	'fish'			
-el-			/vIelo/	'central'	
-er-	/moero/	'boot'		•	
-ey-			/eyo/	'said'	
-kt-			/ekteli/	'forty one'	
-kt-			/tiktik/	'sound produced by a watch'	
-kd-			/thUk deni/'spitting pot'		
-kj-			/bekja/	'gabble' (Fut.Imp.Pl.)	
-kb-	-		/bakbo/	'(we) shall gabble'	
-kn-			/bokmu/	'to gabble'	
-ks-	/nokso/	'map'	/eksath/	'sixty-one'	
-kh-	/sokhi/	'generous'			
-k1-	/takliph/	'trouble'		-	
-kr-	/tekro/	'h111'		-	
-kr-	/pkro/	'wood'		-	
-bp-			/gorobpat/	'abortion'	
-bj-			/sobja/	'flourish' (fut.Imp.Pl.)	
-55-			/80000/	'(we) shall flourish'	
-bp-			/sobpu/	'to flourish'	
-br-	/obro/	'wenk'		•	

	(A)			(B)
-pr-	/pubro/	'puppy'		-
-by-	/sabya/	'member'		
-dp-			/voidpo/	'doctorship'
-dg-	/Udgeton/	'opening'		
-dm-			/eodmű/	'fourteenth'
-dn-	/medni/	'land'		-
-d1-	/gadli/	'eushion'		-
-dr-	/dadro/	'ladder'	/kadrupo/	'ugly'
-dy-	/gadya/	'prose'	/radyū/	'games'
-dy-	/vadyū/	'wives of the carpent	ers'	
-33-			/bella/	'run away' (Fut.Imp.Fl.)
-1g-	/signe/	'boa'		
-35-	/majbut/	'strong'	/b0350/	'(we) shall run away'
-Jm-	/sjmu/	'bishop's weed'	/rajmel/	'palace'
-jņ-	•		/bejnu/	'to run away'
-jh-	•		/rajhans/	'swan'
-3r-	/pejro/	'cage'		
-jv-	/ujveriyo,	"bright"		-
-jy-	/bajyū/	'vegetables	**	
-gp-	-		/gugpapu/	'dumbness'
-gdt-	-		/sīgdaņa/	'ground nuts'
-gj-			/legja/	'strike' (Fut.Imp.Pl.)

	(A)			(B)
-gg-			/aggari/	'train'
-g5/			/log50/	'(we)shall strike'
-gn-	/agnidles	/'north-east	1	
-g:-			/lagnu/	'to strike'
-gr-	/ograi/	'belch'		-
-gr#	/kagro/	'erow'		-
-gv-	/bagvan/	'God'		***
-gy-	/jogye/	'fit'		
-6k-	/jobkar/	'shining'		
-5a-	/e50cs/	'word'		* 17 12 E. E. & MINOS
-6j-	/kabjo/	'control'	/aUbja/	'be shaken' (Fut.Imp.Fl.)
-55-			/dV660/	'(we)will be shaken'
-bn-	•		/dubnu/	'to be shaken'
-51-	/00810/	'tin'		•
-6r-	/dabro/	'wooden- sleeper'		
-5y-	/byo/	'another'		
-dk-	/hedki/	'hiceup'		
-āy-			/ehadyo/	'left'
-mp -	/kampi/	'heving thirlled'		•
-me	/esmeo/	'spoon'		
-mk-	/comkar/	'glittering	g¹	
-mj-	/semjej/	'understand (Fut. Imp.)	i'/sumja/	'sleep' (Fut.Imp.Pl.)

(A)

(B)

'to sleep' /summu/ -mn-/daya msara/ 'inn' -ms-'attack' /humlo/ -ml -'tamerind' /gamro/ 'small village' /amri/ -III -/santi/ 'posco' /navinte/ 'novelty! -nt-/genti/ 'small bell' -- 5-/candar/ 'moon' -nd-/Injan/ 'engine' /manja/ 'obey' -DJ-(Fut. Imp. Pl.) -nb-/monbo/ '(we)shall obey' /monnu/ 'to obey' -nn-/pensil/ 'peneil' -ns-'fifteen' /ponro/ will Live /cunri/ 'a garment' -nrmInyu/ 'eats ' -ny-/manyo/ 'obeyed' /oganpanjs/'fortynine' -np-/saptali/ 'forty seven' -nt-/ogoneali/ 'thirty nine' -ne-/manko/ -nk-'bead' /khando/ '(he) will lift' -nd-/kaudo/ 'thorn' -nd--nj-/khanje/ 'lift' (Fut. Imp. Pl.) /singar/ 'decoration'/gingUnat/ 'whisper' "ng" -nb-/menbati/ 'candle' -nn-/khannu/ 'to lift' /sonsoth/ 'sixty seven' -ns-

(B) (A) -XX-/khanyu/ 'mines' /kenyu/ 'one-eyed' -ny-(f. Pl.) -ng-/jongol/ 'forest' -nn-/mennu/ 'to beg' /rinna/ 'brinjals' /Ispatal/ 'hospital' -sp-'friendship' /dosti/ -st-/Istul/ 'stool' -st-'army' -sk-/loskor/ /dosdar/ 'friend' ~sd-/disjs/ tees! -83-(Fut. Imp. Pl.) /dlabo/ '(we) shall see' -sb-/desmu/ 'tenth' 'blue' /asman1/ -gm-/dlsnu/ 'to see' -sn-/healo/ 'swan' 'kerosene' -81-/gaslet/ 'suger -/misr1/ -BIcandy' /tejasvi/ 'glorious' -sv-'went' 'clever' /Usyo/ /hosyar/ -8y-/kolpido/ '(he) will -lpcreate' 'vomit' /Ult1/ -1t-'greedy' /laleu/ -le-'light -1k-/holko/ (in weight) 'officer' /amaldar/ /baldi/ 'bucket' -1d-"move" /halja/ -11-

(Fut. Imp. Fl.)

(B) (A) /halbo/ '(we)shall move' -16-'to move' /holnu/ -ln-'basil' /tUlsi/ -ls-'sword' /tolvar/ -1v-'boved' 'good' /holyo/ /601yu/ -ly-(f.pl.) 'scraper' /khurp1/ -PD-'cruelty' /krurta/ 'land' /dart1/ -pt-'erab' /karealo/ -PC-'government'/gdrkayde/ 'illegal' /sorkar/ mpk-/morbani/ 'kindness' wish -/machardani/'mosquito-net' 'neck' /gorden/ -rd-'come down' /Uterja/ 'roar' /gorjan/ -pj-(Fut.Imp.Pl.) teock* /mUrgo/ -rg-/Utarbo/ '(we)shall come /corbi/ 1fat1 -r6down ! /barmu/ 'twelth' 'heat' /gormi/ -PIN-/gavarnar/'governor' -PH-/Uternu/ 'to come down' -lill-'rain' /versad/ -25-'sugar-case' /serri/ -Lilon 'door' /dervajo/ -PV-'loved' "mad" /g Uryo/ /caryo/ **PY ** 'sun-shine' /terko/ -rk-'curtain' -Pd-/pardo/ 'climb' /cerja/ -13-(Fut.Imp.Pl.)

(A)

(B)

-rg-	/pargo/	'echo'		
-rb-	/50 get/	'Jaw'	\corpo/	'(we)shall elimb'
-rn-	-		/earnu/	'to elimb'
-78-			/serseth/	'sixty-seven'
-Ty-	-		/rəryū/	'eries'
-vt-	/vavto/	'flag'		•
-vj-			/jlVja/	'drip' (Fut.Imp.Pl.)
-vō-			/31v50/	'(we)shall drip'
-vn-	/chavn1/	'encomp- ment'	/jlvpu/	'to drip'
-vr-	/suvrani/	'bear'(F.)		•
-Vr-	/pavro/	'spade'		
-vy-	/kavya/	'postry'	/JIvyo/	'dripped'
-yb-	/laybri/	'library'		•
-ya-	/raydan/	' a name'	/heydel/	'cavlary'
-yn-	/paynu/	'stone'	/goyou/	'to milk'
-yr-	/boyro/	'0011'		•
-yr-	/bayr1/	'woman'		
(b)	Three-con	sonent-clus	ters :	
-pkh			/topkhanu/	'artillary'
-pnd-			/khaphdo/	'(it)will be consumed'

	(A)		(B)
-phs-	/phephso/ 'lung'		-
-ply-	/toplyu/ 'baskets'		•
-ргу-	/upryaman/ 'anythin given to make an exchange equal.	re	
-thp-		/thothpanu	/'emptiness'
-thm-	/prathma/ 'prayer'		•
-thv-	/prothvi/ 'land'		
-thr-	/pathri/ 'stone'		-
-thr-	/kothri/ 'bag'		+
-thy-		/Uthyo/	'stood up'
-thv-	/sthveriyo/'week'		+ 12 2 2 2 2 2 2
-tnd-		/khatndo/	'(he)will din'
-thg-		/athganu/	'eight-fold'
-thm-	•	/sothmu/	'sixtieth'
-thn-	/kathmei/ 'difficul	lty'	-
-thy-		/Uthyo/	'stood up'
-ehm-	/pachmi/ 'western'		
-chl-		/machl1/	'small fish'
-ktr-		/oktri/	'thirty one'
-kth-	/coktho/ 'frame'		
-lend-	•	/vIlando/	'(he)will sell'
-khņ-	/dakhnu/ 'souther	11	-
-khl-	/gokhlo/ 'hole'		
-khr-	/akhri/ 'lest'		•

	(A)			(B)
-khr-	/cakhri/	'wooden shoe'		•
-khy-	-		/okhyū/	'eyes'
-jnd-			/gojndo/	'(he)will roar'
-gnd-	•		/Ugndo/	'(he)will rise'
-dnd-			/Vando/	'(he)will fly'
-mb1-	/thomblo/	'piller'		
-mph-			/jamphel/	'guava'
-mbn-			/llmbnu/	'to besmear'
-ntr-	/mentri/	'secretary'		
-ntr-	/gentri/	'small bell'	•	
-nmd-	•		/jonmdo/	'(he)will born'
-ney-	•		/pancyasi/	'eighty five'
-nnd-			/sUnndo/	'(he) will recognize'
-ntr -			/ogantri/	'twenty nine'
-ndn-			/ehandru/	'to clean with a piece of cloth'
-ng1-	/kUnglo/	'one with de vitalise limbs'	ad	•
-pkh-	/ponkhi/	'bird'		
-str-	/Istri/	'woman, wife	•	-
-skh-	/nUskho/	'prescription	on'	
-snd-			/dlendo/	'(he) will see'
-1ty-	/Ultyu/	'vomitings'		* 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 10
-1nd-	•		/khIlndo/	'(he)will laugh'

	(A)		(B)
-rth-	/swarthi/ 'selfish'		-
-rnd-		/marado/	'(he)will die'
-rkh-	/murkhai/ 'foolishme	981	•
-reh-	/tarehornu/ 'to conde	em'	•
-rkh-	/orkhan/ 'acquaintar	nce'	•
-rnd-		/karndo/	'(it) will boil'
-rph-	• 45	/phorphore	t/ 'flutter'
-ybr-	/laybri/ 'library'		•
-ytr-	/daytri/ 'sickle'		•
-yph-		/jayphel/	'nut meg'
-yns-	/seynsa/ 'king'		•
(e)	Four-Consonent cluste	ors:	
-phnd-	/haphndo/	'(he) will	gabble*
-trnd-	/Utrado/	'(he) will	come down'
-third-	/batkndo/	'(he) will	wander'
-chnd-	/kUehndo/	'(he) will	ulter'
-khnd-	/sIkhndo/	'(he) will	learn*
-kind-	/nIkrndo/	'(he) will	come out'
-brnd-	/khobrndo/	'(he) will	wait'
-dlnd-	/badlndo/	'(he) will	change'
-drnd-	/sUdrado/	'(he) will	improve'
-jrnd-	/gujrndo/	'(he) will	pass a way'
-grad-	/blgrndo/	'(he) will	be spoiled'
-5knd-	/Joblando/	'(he) will	shine'
-mpnd-	/kampndo/	'(he) will	thrill'

-mbnd-	·/rembndo/	'(he) will bellow'
-mjnd-	/semjndo/	'(he) will understand'
-mknd-	/comkndo/	'(he) will glitter'
-njnd-	/mUnjndo/	'(he) will be entangled '
-ngad-	/khangndo/	'(he) will cough'
-sknd-	/khlskndo/	'(he) will slip'
-rtnd-	/vortndo/	'(he) will behave'
-rend-	/vlrendo/	'(he) will become unhappy'
-rknd-	/mUrkndo/	'(he) will smile'
-rjnd-	/dlrjndo/	'(he) will fear '
-rgnd-	/vIrgndo/	'(he) will bite '
-rknd-	/karkndo/	'(he) will thunder '
THE RESIDENCE OF STREET		

A chart of Consonant Clusters on page 60

A CHART OF CONSONANT CLUSTERS

AND THE THE THE PART OF THE PA			Maries de de la	************************************	er: 46 50 66-40	***	4) 700 City 400 400 400 4	*****	·	e est top the era	and the same shall	-		40 40 40 60 80	no sa ch es us	***		-	* C2 10 10 00 U				64 45 24 44	
Following preceding	P	t		C	k	b	d	đ	1.	E .		0	n	n	ņ	n	8	h) # 600 UP\$ 100 UP\$ 400 UP\$ 400	r	V	У	
p	eis.	4	*	4	*	*	100	*	*	399	+	eti.	×i,	*	4	*	-	4	4 . 4		+			
t		*	.	~	•	*	úe	•	*	**	♣	•	·	*	*	Pine	\$477	*	-	÷	+	*	*	
t .	. **	·	**	. *	*		-	**	\$	*	4	-	**	÷	*	die	ta .	dj.	4 .		*	-	4	•
C	•	ide Sign	-	***	* .	*	•	**	查	e	P	***	**	4	4	*	34	4	+	*	÷ '		+	
k .	.	*	*	.	, m(2)	**	*		4	=	4	. =	**	*	4	-	*	4	4 .		+	*	o g ir	
b	-		**	le in	-	**e	•	, ess.	+	4	4	all)		*	+	-	•	-	+ 4	is .	÷	-	*	
d.	*	187	226	***	-	, 480	**	**	4	*	4		**	÷	÷	-	-	•	*** 4		- ,	*	*	
Ĝ.	-	**	oie.	**	>=	œi.	*	2 00		*	•	-	•		*	**	**	-				40 4	*	,
3		*	÷	***	200	24	en.	•	*	+	*	240	4	4	4	Sep.	-		- 4	÷	•	*	agi.	
.	100	tio	Mark .	•		***	-	, ch	*	**	+	•	. 🛶	+ '	4	á.	-		+ +	•		بايد .	′ 4 -	
5	40	•	,==	. +	+	-	*	69	4	199	4	im	-	,	*	ity	47	•	4 .	•	+	•	. *	
ā	***	· •			*	\$10	фb		+	, ~	+	**	***	*	*	~	. •		-	•		104	*	
m	.4			•	*	*	4	eir	*		+	•	20	-	4	###	•		+ 4	•	+	****		u se ^t
. Ti	ب	· office	*		*	- , tes	A).	**	÷	***	. .	-	4	-	*	*		,	- 4	•	÷	+0	+	
73	*	*	Ally	+	*	***	.*	惨	*	+	*	989	**	•	4	ew.	专	مريد.	*	•	Ann	-	4	
	•	-	**	90		*	***	api.	-	4	- 469	*	•		÷		•		*	•	<u>.</u>	-	-	
8		*	, * ;		#	-040	*	nin .	+	*	4	540 ·	d.	. *	\$,		=	- 1	1 1	•	-	\$	*	
h	*	788	*	100	🚓		*	#65	***	*	-	. 6 66	4	*	4	**	*	çası	4.	Ř	÷	+	eş.	×
1	*	₩ .	+	4	4	•	* ,	•	4	de	*	ė _{ja}	***	·* .	+	**	. 4	tu	-		· One	+	+	
Y .	4	+	₩ .	. 🕏	*	*	*	**	*	4	*	* *	· `+	+	*	=	÷.	166		•	*	4	*	
r	. 4		*		4	*	*	9 00	*	4	*	sie.	-	+	4	*	+	~ ,			-	+	4	z:
v	.		*	***	.	•		t tjæ	*	40	*	**	4	**	.		***				· *	*	. +	
y		Æ	*			đ _i		in.		***	**		çai'		,ši	. "	•				.£		_	
<i>y</i> ,	-Y-	7				-E	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			and a					7	,			. 7		. Jac	SE-7		

Note: - '+' denotes occurrence and ! - ' denotes non-occurrence.

1.14 Syllabic pattern:

bles ranging upto seven Syllables. The maximum number of syllable patterns is found in the mone-syllables. Except the pattern CCCV all other patterns are observed in the mone-syllables. This CCCV pattern provides three consonant cluster which is not allowed in the initial position. The patterns are gradually reduced from eleven to one. In all there are eleven syllable patterns from which ten patterns are found in the mone-syllables or in the first syllable of poly syllables. The number of patterns, in the second syllable, becomes eight. In third syllable we get four patterns, in fourth syllable two and in fifth, sixth, seventh syllables only one.

1.14.1 Syllabic patterns in the mono-syllables:

The following patterns of syllables have been found in the mono-syllables:

(1)	V	/1/	'this'	/4/	'that'
(11)	cV	/pe/	'father'	/h1/	'he'
(111)	CCV	/tr8/	'three'	/dra/	'fear'
(iv)	VC	/ag/	'fire'	/90/	'come'(Imp.)
(v)	vec	/okh/	toye1	/ath/	'eight'
(v1)	cvc	/car/	'four'	/ker/	'who'
(vii)	ccvc	/nyer/	'look' (Imp.)	/trlm/	'drip' (Imp.)
(v111)	CCVCC	/khang/	'eough'	/ehand/	'elean'(Imp.)

(1x)	CVCC	/llmb/	'besmear' (Imp.)	/kamp/	*thrill'
			(Imp.)		(Imp.)

(x) CVCCC /sankh/ 'conch' /kanth/ 'neek'

1.14.2 Syllabic patterns in the second syllable:

The following patterns of syllables have been noted in the second syllable:

(1)	V	/ã ũ/	111	/ba	1/ 1	mother'
(11)	CV	/ka ro/	'black'	/ka	riar/	'cobra'

(111) CCV /ma chi/'fish' /pan khi/'bird'

(iv) VC /5U ar/ 'sweep' /du ar/ 'cause to wash' (Imp.)

(v) CVC /Ue kar/'sound' /khp rab/ 'bad'

(vi) CCVC /ma khan/ 'butter'

(vii) CVCC /tak liph/ 'trouble' /a kars/ 'attract' (Imp.)

(viii) CCCV /pro thvi/ 'land' /o thva si/ 'eighty-eight'

1.14.8 Syllabic patterns in the third syllable:

Following patterns of syllables have been noted in the third syllable:

(1) V	12- 4- 1	I Branch San		And managed	200
(1)	100 18 1	/ 'having	经商品的设计	TO MOVE	ALC: N
	THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T	ALTERNATION OF THE PARTY OF THE	- The statement of the seal	COMPANY OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	

(11) VC /ka ri or/ 'cobra'

(111) CV /ka rī go/ 'water melon'

(iv) GVC /Up rya man/ 'anything given to make exchange equal'

1.14.4 Syllabic patterns in the fourth syllable:

Pollowing patterns of sylbbles have been observed in the fourth syllable:

- (1) V /ha la ra 1/ 'having caused (one) to got (some one) moved'
- (11) CV /hs la I do/ 'he will cause to move'

1.14.5 Syllable patterns in the fifth, sixth, seventh

In fifth, sixth and seventh syllable, there is only one pattern C V .

/ha la ra I do/

'he will cause (one) to get
(some one) moved'

/ha la ra I do se/

'I shall cause (one) to get
(some one) moved' (m.)

/ha la ra I di ya se/

'I shall cause (one) to get
(some one) moved' (f.)

CHAPTER

2

SUPRASEGMENTAL-PHONOLOGY

2.1 Supra Segmental Phonemes:

Following suprasegmental features have phonemic status in Kachi:

1. Nasalization.

2. Juneture.

2.2 Nasalisation:

Nasalisation is phonemic in Kachi. Hence there is contrast between non-nasalised and nasalised vowels, e.g.

/i/ 'he

/i/ 'like that'

/vej/ 'sit' (hereafter) (imp.)

/vej/ 'bathe'

/so/ 'show'

/so/ 'oath'

2.2.1 Contrast between nesals and nasalised vowels:

Kachi has four nesel phonemes / m, n, n, n /.
Within the general limitations of distribution, there is
full contrast between all the masals and the masalised .

vowels, e.g.

/sim/ 'border'
/si/ 'lion'

/son/ 'gold'
/so/ 'oath'
/ven/ 'ship'
/va/ '(I) may be '
/hing/ 'stool' (Imp.)
/hig/ 'asafoetida'

It is a phonological rule of Eachi, that the nasal /n/ and/n/ do not occur in the initial position;
Thus, in the initial position, we get four-way contrast:

mv-, nv-, V-, v-;

In the medial position we get six-fold contrast:

and in the final position six-way contrast: -Vm , -Vn , -Vn , -V , -V , -V

Initial contrast:

/mali/ 'gardener'
/nali/ 'drain'
/aji/ 'your'
/ali/ 'wet'

Medial contrast:

/nami/ 'having bowed down'
/sani/ 'thin (f)

/kapi/ 'a small particle'

'having begged'

/vej/ 'bathe' (Imp.)

/vej/ 'sit' (hereafter) (Imp.)

Final contrast:

/vam/ 'left'

[van/ 'vehicle'

/van/ 'ship'

/ran/ 'colour'

/va/ '(I) may be'

/va/ '(they) were!

2.2.2 Occurrence of nasals with stops :

There is no restriction that the masals should always occur only with the homo-organic stops. Hence the masals can occur with homo-organic as well as other stops, provided they occur in the medial position, e.g.

(a) Nasals with homo-organic stops:

/kompi/ 'having thrilled'

/endof 'blind' (m.)

/kando/ 'thorn'

/khangi/ 'having coughed'

(b) Masals with stops other than homo-organic:

/clmto/ 'tongs'

/banbo/ '(we) shall become'

/chanbo/ '(we) shall fall'

/sindana/ 'ground nuts'

2.2.3 Vowels following the masals:

There is contrast in the oral and masalised vowels occurring immediately after a masal consonat. Thus we get the contrastitive sequences like NV: NV (N=nasal; V= vowel). But this contrast is maintained only after the masals '/m, n/. After the masal / n, n/ this contrast is meutralised, e.g.

/me/ 'buffalo'
/me/ 'in'
/nsy/ 'torrent'
/nsy/ ' is not '

2.2.4 Vowels preceding the nasals:

A nasality in the vowels, immediately before a nasal consonant, ceased to be contrastive. Thus we do not get sequences like VN: VN.

2.2.5 <u>Vowels sequences</u>:

The vowel sequences are either oral or nasalised. There are no sequences like $V\overline{V}$ or $\overline{V}V_{\bullet}$

2.3 Juneture.

2.8.1 Kinds of juncture:

There are three kinds of juncture in Kachi, which are in contrast with each other. These junctures are as follows:

- 1. Close juncture, Symbolized as / /
- 2. Internal open or plus juncture, Symbolized as /4/
- 3. Terminal juncture, Symbolized as / 1 /.

2.3.2 Contrast between the junctures:

1.1:1+1	/00,80/	'old man'
	/00 + 80/	'(I) heard fault'
	/me_thi/	'fenugreek'
	/me,thi/	'from buffalo'
1+1 : 141	/sari,glre,/	'(he) bought a sari but'
	/sari+glrev/	'(he) bought a sari.
1+/=/1/	/ba+kuro cel/	'what price did (he) tell? '
	/ba↑kuro cẽ↓/	'brother! what did (he) tell ?'
141:111	/sari ₊ gIre \/	'(he) bought a sari'
	/sari ₄ gIrel/	'did (he) boy a sari?'

2.8.3 Phonetic description of the junctures:

'four'

2.3.1 Close Juncture / /

/ca_r/

The close juncture characterises silence transition between vowels / V_V/ and segmental release between consonants / C_C / or vowel and consonant /V_C /, e.g.

/baj/ 'mother' /sajukajr/ 'rich'

/khang/ 'cough' /akh_ri/ 'last'

/ka_ro/

'black'

The close juncture is left unmarked in the phonemic transcription.

2.3.3.2 Open juncture / + /

The open juncture exhibits the following - characteristics:

- (a) The vowels in the pre-junctural position are prolonged _ :: _ 7 .
- (b) Any consonant in the pre-junctural position occurs with a sharp release and is longer than its post-junctural allophone.
- (c) Intensity of stress increases on the pre -

Some examples of open juncture are given below:

this forest belongs

to state

'old man' [do.s.] /do_so/ '(I) heard fault' [douso.] /do + so/ [me, thi. 7 /me_thi/ 'fenugreek' _ mesthi. 7 /mesthi/ 'from buffalo' [ra.par s.ya. 7 / ra par a ya/ '(they) came to rapar (name of a village* [ra::per a.ya.] /ra.per a ya/ the king of Kutch came last year' /himva.n.ra.j.vatema.y/ / /hi, van raj, vatemay this belongs to Vanraj (a name) /hi vangra.j:vatega.y / /hi van, raj,vate,ay /

2.3.3.3 Terminal falling and rising junctures / 1/1/

The terminal junctures occur in the final position of utterance. These are characterised by all features of open juncture / + / and some what longer pause. Silence may be extended indefinitely. Terminal juncture occurring with falling pitch /4/ is in contrast with the terminal juncture occurring with rising pitch /1/ e.g.

/kor+ ay 1/ /ker + ay 1/ /chokri + nacs + ti // 'a girl dances' /chokri4nec34ti 1/

'some one is (there)' 'is some one (there) ? ' 'does a girl dence ? '

水水水水水水水水水水水水

MORPHOLOGY

CHAPTER

SUBSTABTIVE

3.1 Phonological features:

In Eachi, a substantive may begin and end with a vowel or a consonant. With the general limitations of distribution, all the vowels and the consonants are found in the beginning and at the end of the substantives. However, the majority of the substantives end with the consonants.

The following list will provide the illustrations:

	Begining		end		
Vowels:					
101	/olds/	'oye'	/montro/	'spell'	
10/	/akhani/	'story'	/50/	'arm'	
/1/	/Icha/	'desire'	•		
/1/	/1d/	'a Muslim	/moti/ '	'pearl'	
/0/	/Uth/	'camel'			
/u/	/un/	'wool'	/maru/	'person'	
101	/on/	'env11'	/vare/	'year'	
181	/Seen/	'favour'	1581	'victory	

Vovelst	Pegining		End	
101	/otho/	'example'	/9020/	'horse'
10/	/okmr/	'dryness'	/piro/	'down'
Consonen	ts:			
101	/pol/	'moment'	/enp/	'lip'
101	/taro/	'star'	/bit/	'wall'
151	/tolo/	'louse'	/mot/	'jar'
/0/	1000/	'11p'	/mac/	'fire'
111	/kan/	'ear'	/nok/	'nose'
101	/6910/	'good'	/reb/	'God'
101	/dor/	'door'	/dend/	'tooth'
191	/dak/	'cover'	16081	'fort'
131	13021	'water'	/613/	'soed'
181	/gal/	'tale'	/geq/	'foot'
161	/50r/	'strength'	1206/	'cooked rice'
191	/402/	'den'	15081	'call'
/10/	/mon/	'fire'	/kam/	'work'
/n/	/mdk/	'nose'	/ken/	'ear'
101			/hen/	'dear'
121			/sIn/	thorn
101	1578/	'mother- in-law'	/mas/	'flesh'
/h/	/hoth/	'hand'	/noth/.	'nose-ring'
/1/	/108/	ferance!	/v=1/	'oreeper'
121	/rat/	'night'	/tir/	'arrow'
181	•		/thor/	'stem'
/٧/	/ven/	'ship'	/3=v/	'barley'
141	/yar/	'friend'	/cay/	'tea'

3.2 Substantives ending with - 9 :

The following points should be noted about the with substantives ending -> .

- 1. These Substantives are very few in number.
- They all are masculine: except /sebye/ 'member' which is used in both the genders.
- S. There is always a consonant, cluster, preceding the final vowel > ,e.g., mentre 'spell'
- 4. It appears that they have been borrowed from Sanskrit.

The list of these words, is given below:

/kevys/ 'poetry' /ssbds/ 'word'

/gsdys/ 'prose' /tstvs/ 'element'

/mantrs/ 'spell' /ssbys/ 'member'

/yantrs/ 'machine'

3.3 Grammatical Categories:

The substantives, in Kachi, exhibit three grammatical categories, namely, gender, number and case. Number and case are inflectional categories while gender is either a derivational or a lexically selective category.

3.3.1 Gender:

plural, e.g.,

gor-o

gor-a

There are two genders in Machi: the masculine and the feminine. Every substantive must possess one of them. There are a few substantives which are used in both the genders. e.g., / lui / 'blood'. / j/ / 'victory' etc.,

In the majority of the substantives, the gender is a lexically selective category. However, there is a limited number of substantives in which the gender is a derivational category, i.e., it is expressed by the derivational suffixes.

Here are examples of both types:

(a)	Lexi	cally sele	cted gende	Ľ:	
no	khasi	ay	(fem)	,	the bride is good'
mō_	khaso	ay	(mas)		the face is good'
ma_	eed .	ti	(fem)	•	the mother comes'
ba	903	to	(mas)	,	the brother comes'
(b)	Deri	vational s	ender:		
gor.	•		(mas)		' horse'
gor.	1		(fem)		' mare'
do6-	1		(mas)		'washerman'
dob-	·on		(fem)		'wesherwendh'
3.3.	S Numb	er:			

There are two numbers in Machi, singular and

' horse'

' horses'

Asg.)

(pl.)

ekh (eg.) 'eye' ekh-yū (pl.) 'eyes'

Normally, every substantive distinguishes both the numbers, however, there are some substantives which express only singular or plural number. For example /J:/
'victory' is used only in the singular while / Saura/
'in-laws', / janda/ 'hair of child' are used only in the plural number. Besides, the infinitive form of the verbacot is always used as a singular substantive. e.g.,

mu Ke <u>vacnu</u> ay 'I have <u>to read'</u>

<u>vacon</u> Upyogi ay 'reading is useful'

8.8.8 Case:

fold contrast in cases viz., the nominative, the vocative and the oblique, yet in the majority of the substantives the distinction between the nominative and the vocative is not overt. In these substantives, the nominative and the vocative forms are indentical. Besides, these substantives on the morphological level, do not express any case-con trast in the singular form.

Substantives having a distinction of nom. & voc.

chokr-o est to (Nom. Sg.) 's boy comes'

chokr-a filte se (Voc. Sg.) 'o boy, come here'

chokr-e ke ca (obl. dg.) 'tell the boy '

Substantive having no distinction between nom. and voc.

rain	908	to	(nom. Sg.)	'a king comes'
raja	hite	>0	(voc. Sg.)	' o king, come here'
roja	ke	60	(obl. Sg.)	' tell the king '

are expressed by adding the case-suffix to the substan - tive-stem (s.stem). The nominative singular, being identical with the s.stem, is considered as unmarked. The case suffix stands for the number also. It closes the construction on the morphological level.

3.3.4 Post position.

The inflected form of the Substantive enters into the syntactical construction. Then a substantive is in the oblique case, it has two types of syntactical constructions: one, without post position, another with post position, e.g.,

gor _e ga khado 'a horse ate the grass '

In both the examples, gor-e is in obl. Sg. In the first example it is not followed by any post-position, but in the second example it is followed by a post-position, -ke- to. '

The post position may be free or bound. The free post position is that which alone can occur as a

free from, while the bound post position can not occur alone as a free form.

- 1. hin ke co ' test to him'
- 2. hIn pase vIn. ' go to him '
- 3. ober pase vin. ' go to east-side '

The post-position ke 'to' occurring in the first example, is a bound one. The post-position -pase'to' is free. It can occur as an independent word as in example 3.

The substantive (in oblique form) with post - position has the following types:-

- (1) Substantive (obl) + one bound post-position, e.g., gor -e ke ga ds 'give grass to the horse'
- (11) Substantive (obl) + two bound post-positions, e.g. qud mlja thi qai band ti

' curd is made from milk '

- (111) Substantive (obl) + one free post-position, e.g.

 gor- e pase gado ubo ay

 ' the cart is standing near the horse '
 - (iv) Substantive(obl) + one bound and one free postposition, e.g.

gor -e <u>le pos</u> grão sy

' the cart is after the horse '

3.4 Classes of the Substantives:

Masculine.

clas	18		Stem	Form	inative	Voca	tive	Oblio	uo
				Sg.	F1.	Sg.	Pl.	Sg.	Pl.
1. ((a)	goro	'horse'	•	-8	-a	-a	-0	- 0
((b)	bo	'worshipper'	-	-a ~p	-2-9	-8-0	-e-#	-ē-ø
2. ((a)	raja	'king'	•	-9	-9	-0	-%	-5
((b)	po	'dung'		-0	-10	-16	-6	-0-2

Feminine.

Cla	88		Stem	Romi Sg.	native	Voe	Pl.	Obli Sg.	eue Pl.

1.	(4)	mara	'garland'		-ū	-9	- ũ	-%	-0
	(b)	80	'show'		-ü-Ø	-9	-û-ø	-1	-0-2
2.		əkh	'eye'		-yű	-9	-yũ	-9	-1ē
3.	(a)	gau	'dow'		-ø	-\$	-0	-0	- ë
	(b)	sars	'musterd'			-9	-9	-1	-5-8

3.4 Classification of Substantives:

All the Eachi Substantives are divided into two categories, namely, masculine and feminine. Each category consists of some clas as which are based on the type of inflectional suffixes. A group of substantives, whose

members are declined alike and which has the common set at inflectional suffixes, forms a class.

The description of all the classes is given below.

2.4.1 Masculine Substantives:

Class-1.

This class consists of some -o and -u ending substantives. The -u ending substantives are those which are immediately preceded by a nasal, i.e. / m, n,n & n /

This is the only class of the substantives in which the three-fold contrast of the case is exhibited, that is the nominative and the vocative forms are distinguished. Besides, the distinction of all the three cases is maintained in the singular form.

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the substantives of this class:

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	-	-a
Voe.	-8	-a
061.	-0	-ë

This class is divided into the subclass (a) and (b). The substantives of sub-class (a) take the above - mentioned suffixes without any option; while the substantives of the sub-class (b), optionally take -Ø in place

of all the above mentioned suffixes. The substantives of the sub-class (a) are always poly syllabic while the substantives of (b) are mono-syllabic. /goro/ 'horse' represents the sub-class (a) and / bo / 'worshipper' represents the sub-class (b)

The final vowel of the substintives, belonging to (a), is dropped before adding the inflectional - suffix.

Here are the paradigms of both the sub-classes.

Sub-class (a)

	/goro/	'horse'	/amu/	'mango'
	Sg.	P1.	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	goro	gor-a	esion.	am-a
Voc.	gor-a	gor-a	an-a	am-a
061.	gor-e	gor-ē	em-e	em-ë

Sub-class (b)

	100/	'worshipper'		
	Sg.		Pl.	
Nom.	bo		bo-a	-bo
Voc.	bo-a ~	bo	bo-a	~bo
Obl.	to-e .	bo	bo-e	_ bc

Class-2

masculine substantives come under this class. The substantives of this class do not make distinction of number in

the nominative and the vocative forms. Hence the contrast remains only between the stem and the oblique plural.

Pollowing are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the substantives of this class.

	Sg.	P1.
Nom.	•	- ø
Voe.	-9	-ø
051.	-9	-6

The substantives of this class are divided into two sub-classes (a) and (b). The substantives of (a) sub-class take above mentioned suffixes without option, while the substantives of (b) optionally affer - in the place of Ob. Fl. -e.

The following morphophonemic changes take place before adding the inflectional suffix (i.e. Obl.Pl.)

(iv)
$$-e\tilde{u} > -IV$$
 e.g.
 $ge\tilde{u} + \tilde{e} = gIV - \tilde{e}$ 'wheat (Obl. Pl.)

Here are the paradigms of some substantives.

Sub-class (a)

the promote and the party	CETTE CONTROL OF CONTR			
	/mentre/	'apell'	/raja/	'king '
	Bg.	Pl.	Sg.	P1.
Nom.	mentre	mentre	reja	raja
Voc.	montro	mentre	raja	raja
061.	montro	mentr-ë	raja	raja-ē
	/moti/	'pearl	/maru/	'person'
Nom.	moti	noti	maru	maru
Voc.	moti	mo,t1	maru	meru
061.	moti	moti-ë	maru	maru-ë
	1001	'dovil'	vorā	'year'
Nom.	de	de	vere	vorê
Voe.	de	de	vere	vərē
061.	se	d-e	verã	V01-3
	/gou/	'wheat'	/glro/	'planet'
Nom.	goū	geũ	gIro	glro
Voc.	geü	geū	glra	glro
Cb1.	goũ	glv-ë	glro	glro-ë
	/mo/	'face'	/59/	*name*
Nom.	mõ	mõ	na	nã
Voc.	mô	mõ	na	na
Obl.	mö	mõ-õ	na	na-e

	/nak/	'nose'	/mas/	'flesh'
	Ug.	P1.	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	nak	nak	mas	mes
Voc.	nok	nok	gem	mas .
Ob1.	nak	nak-ë	ma s	ma a - ē
Sub-qla	es (b)			
	/po/	'dung '	/sIvel3/	'temple'
Nom.	ро	ро	sIvals	sivals
Voc.	po	po	sivals	sivals
Ob1.	ро	po-ē~po-Ø	sivals	sival:-0 = sival:-0

3.4.2 Feminine.

Most of the feminine substantives come under this class. Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the substantives of this class.

	Sg.	P1.
Nom.		-ũ
Voe.	-9	-ũ
061.	-0	-0

The following corphophonemic changes take place before adding the inflectional suffixes.

(11)	final	-y	i before -ë e.g.
	Cay-e		Cai-e 'tea' (Obl. Pl.)

(iv) Before the inflectional suffixes, /vau/ 'bride',
becomes vaUr-; /ma/ 'mother' /di/ 'daughter',
and no 'daughter-in-law' optionally become
maUr-, dir- nor- respectively.

/ben/ 'sister' becomes ben-- benr-- benr-.

This class also is divided into two sub-classes

(a) and (b). The substantives of the sub-class (a) take the above-mentioned suffixes without any option while the substantives of the sub-class (b) offer -p in place of ell the suffixes.

Here are the paradigms of some substantives from both the sub-classes.

	/dava/	'Medeine'	/gori/	'mare'
	eg.	P1.	Bg.	P1.
Nom.	dava	dava-ũ	gori	goryū
Voc.	dava	dava-ũ	gori	gory-ũ

dava-e

gori

Sub-class (a)

dava

051.

	1801	'lisand'	/plro/	'dawn'
Nom.	go	go-û	pIra.	plro-ũ
Voc.	go	go-ũ	plro	pIro-ũ
Ob1.	go	go-ë	plro	plro-ë
	/uev/	'bride'	/ma/	'mother'
Non.	ven	vəm-ü	ma	ma-maur-u
Voc.	vəu	vour-ũ	ma	ma-maur-ū
Ob1.	vou	vəur-ë	ma	ma-maur-ë
	/no/ 'd	aughter-in-lew'	/01/ ('anughter'
Nom.	no	no-nor-u	di	di-dir-u
Voc.	nõ	no-nor-ŭ	di	di-dir-u
Obl.	nõ	no-nor-e	di	di-dir-e
	/ben/	'sister'		
Nom.	ben	ben benr-benr	- ū	
Voc.	ben	ben-benr-ben	ın-ũ	
obl.	ben	ben-benr-ben	n-3	
Sub-cla	ss (b)			
	/80/	'show!	/eay/	'tea'
	8g.	P1.	Sg.	F1.
Nom.	80	so-u-#	cay	cay-u-p.
Voc.	80	80-ũ-Ø	cay	cay-u-p
оы.	80	80-6-9	cay	cai-ë.

cay-ø

Class-2.

There are some feminine substantives which come under this class.

The following suffixes are added to the substantives of this class.

	Sg.	Pl.
Nom.	-	-yū
Voe.	-9	-yũ
Ob1.	-0	-10

The following morphophonemic changes occur before adding the inflectional suffixes.

/me/ 'buffalo' becomes /ma-/

Here are the paradigms of some substantives.

	/gō/	(cow)	/me/	'buffalo'
	Sg.	P1.	sg.	P1.
Nom.	gõ	gő-yű	me	mə -yū
Voe.	gō	gō-yũ	me	m-yū
061.	gõ	gō-iē	ma	ma-1ē
	/akh/	'eye'	/rat/	'right'
Nom.	əkh	skh-yū	rat	rat-yū
Voc.	akh	əkh-yű	rat	rat-yū
061.	okh	akh-ie	ret	rat-1ē

Class-3.

This class consists of such substantives, which do not make the distinction of number in the nominative and the Vocative forms. Hence the contrast remains between the stem and the oblique plural form. This class is exactly parallel to the masculine class-2.

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the substantives of this class.

	Sg.	P1.
Nom.		-0
Voc.	-0	-9
Оь1.	-9	-ē

This class is also divided into two sub-classes

(a) and (b). The substantives of the sub-class (a) do not show any option while the substantives of sub-class (b) optionally take -# in place of Obl. Fl. -e

The following morphophonemic changes take place before adding the inflectional suffixes.

Here are the paradigms of some substantives.

Sub-class(a)

/gou/	'cow
Sg.	P1.
gou	gou

Nom.

Sub-class (b)

	/ears/	'mustard'
Nom.	cord	Syca
Voc.	serd	sard
obl.	gord	- Stea
		Q-Erea

3.4.3 Marginal Substantives.

There are some substantives which do not fit into the above mentioned classification. These substantives are treated as marginal. The description of those substantives is given below.

(1) /pe/ 'father' /35/ 'victory'

These substantives, which are very commonaly used, have no declension at all. They remain unchanged in all the numbers and the persons. /pe/ is used as the masculine and /js/ is used in both the genders. e.g.,

unjo pe seë to 'his father comes'
unija pe seë ta 'their fathers come'
un je pe ke co 'tell to his father'
uni je pe ke co 'tell to their fathers'

hIn ji 13 (fem.) 'his victory'
hIn jo 18 (mas.) 'his victory'

(11) /101/ 'blood'

This substantive is used in both the genders.

When it is used as the masculine, it is declined like a substantive of masculine class 2, and when it is used as the feminine, it declined like the substantives of femine nine class 1. The paradigms in both the genders are given below:

	Mesculine		Femini	Feminine	
	Se.	<u>Pl.</u>	SE.	<u>P2.</u>	
Nom.	101	101	101	10y-ũ	
Voc.	101	101	101	1Uy-ũ	
061.	101	101-6	101	1U1-0	

3.5 Inflectional Suffix-Morphemes and their allomorphs:

As the nominative singular has been left unmarked, there remains only five suffix-morphemes, which, along with their allomorphs, are given below:

FNom. Pl.7	/-8/	after	the	substantives	of	Mas.	Class 1
	1-0/	after	the	substantives	20	Fem.	Class 1
	1-50/	after	the	substantives	of	Fem.	Class 2
	1-01	after	the	substantives and	of	Mas.	Class 2
		after	the	substantives	of	Fem.	Class 3
[voc. sg.]	/-0/	after	the	substantives	of	Mas.	Class 1
	1-11	and married	-				

Evoc. Pl.]	/-a/	after the substantives of Mas. Class-1
	/-0/	after the substantives of Fem. Class-1
	1-90/	after the substantives of Fem. Class-2
	1-91	after the substantives of Mas. Class-2
		after the substantives of Fem. Class-3
{061.5g.}	/-0/	the after/substantives of Mas. Class. 1
	1-01	olsowhere
£061.013	/-1ē/ /-ē/	after the substantives of Fem. Class 2 elsewhere

南南南南南南南南南南南南

CHAPTER

4

PRONOUN

4.1 <u>Inventory</u>:

The following 10 pronouns have been found in Eachi language.

1.	First person:	aŭ	ıI.
2.	Second person:	tũ	'you'
8.	Demonstrative proximate:	hi	'this, he, she '
4.	Demonstrative remote:	hu	'that'
5.	Relative:	JUko	'who ever'
6.	Co-relative:	Se .	'that-one'
7.	Interrogative animate:	ker	'who'
8.	Indefinite:	kok	'some one'
9.	Interrogative in animate :	kUro	'what'
10.	Collective:	mire	'every thing, all'

4.2 <u>Grammatical categories:</u>

The pronouns in Kachi, show two grammatical categories, namly number and case. The gender, morphologically is irrelevant to the pronoun. Both the grammatical categories are inflectional, hence the pronoun is declined according to the number and the case. The inflectional suffix which stands for both, the number and the case, is added to the

4.2.1 Number:

There are two numbers, Singular and Plural, which are distinguished in the pronoun. There are some pronouns which make partial distinction of the number and there are a few others which do not make any distinction of the number.

4.2.2 Case:

The Eachi pronouns express two-fold contrast of the case i.e. between the nominative and the oblique. The nominative singular is expressed by the absence of plural suffix. The nominative singular form of a pronoun, is always identical with the stem itself.

4.8 Classes of the pronouns:

Pronoun	Stem		Nom.		Ob1.
		Sg.	P1.	Sg.	P1,
First person	ãu 'ıı		ĩ	-ũ	ā
Second person	tũ 'you'	•	-ĭ	-0	-ã
		8			
Pronoun	Stem	2 50.	Nom.	80.	Obl.
Pronoun	Stem	e Sg.		Sg.	Obl.
Pronoun Demonstrative		g Sg.		Sg.	Obl. Pl

23

Pronoun	Stem		Nom.	Obl.
		Sg.	Pl.	Sg. Pl.
Relative	juko 'whoever'	•		
Co-relative	se 'that- - one'			
Interrogative animate	ker 'who	-	7	***********
Indefinite	kok 'some-			-9
		4		
Pronoun	S	tem	Nom.	Obl.
Interrogative inanimate.	kUro	'what'	•	~° ~ø
Collective	mire 'er			-1

4.4 Classification of the pronouns:

The basic criterion of the classification of

Kachi pronouns is the number-distinction. All the pro
nouns have been divided into following four classes:

Class-1. The pronouns of this class distinguish the number

in both the cases, that is in the nominative and

the oblique.

Class-2: This class consists of such pronouns which make distinction of the number only in the oblique case. Thus in the nominative case the singular and the plural are identical.

Class-3: The pronouns of this class make the distinction of the number only in the oblique case and that is also optional. In other words, the number distinction even in the oblique case is not - obligatory.

Class-4: The pronouns of this class make no number-dis tinction either in the nominative case or oblique
case.

4.5 Conjugation of the pronouns:

4,5,1 Class-1.

Only two personal pronouns-first person and second person-come under this class.

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the stems:

	Nom	Rom.		Obl. Sg. Pl.		
	Sg.	PI.	Sg.	PI.		
First person:		-ĩ	-ũ	-ā		
Second person:		-ĩ	-0	-a		

The following morphophanemic changes occur before adding the inflectional suffixes:

- (i) The final vowel of the stem is dropped before the suffix beginning with a vowel, e.g. tu + -o > t-o 'you' (2nd. Obl. Sg.)
- (ii) First person au 'l' has supplative base as in Pl. and it has base m- in Obl. Sg.
 Similarly the second person tu 'thou' has supplative base a- in nom. pl. and Ø- in Obl. Pl.

The paradigms of both the pronouns are given below

	First	person	ãũ	111	
	Sg.			<u>P1</u> .	
Nom.	ăũ	. 1 .		as-1	'we'
061.	m-ũ	'me'		98-ã.	'us'
	Second	person	tũ	'you'	
Nom.	tũ	'you'		9-Ĩ	'you'
Ob1.	t-o	'you'		ø-ä	'you'

4.5.2

This class covers only two demonstrative primate and remote-pronouns. The demonstrative proximate is used as third person also.

The following inflectional suffixes are added to the stems.

Nom. Obl.

Demonstrative proximate

-n -nî

The following morphophonemic changes occur before adding the inflectional suffixes.

(i) The final vowels -1 and -u become -I and -U respectively, e.g.

hi + n > hIn 'her/him' (Obl. Sg.)

(ii) The initial h- is optionally dropped, e.g., hi ~ i 'this' (dem. prox.)

Here are the paradigms of both the pronouns.

Demonstrative proximate hi 'this, he, she, it '

Nom. (h)1 (h)1 (h)1-n1

Demonstrative remote: hu 'that'

Sg. Pl.

Nom. (h)u (h)u

0bl. (h)U-n (h)U-n1

4.5.3 Class-8.

The four pronouns come under this class. They are relative, co-relative, interrogative animate and - indefinite.

The pronouns of this class optionally distinguish the number in the oblique case. Hence they have
two sets of the inflectional suffixes. In the first set,
the number distinction is made but under the second set,
the distinction is not exhibited.

The following inflectional suffixes are added to the pronouns of this class.

the management	Nom.	0b1.		
		Sg.	<u>P1.</u>	
Relative	•			
Co-relative	•	- •U	-ni	
Inter-animate	-		ē	
Indefinite				

The following morphophonemic changes occur in the pronouns of this class.

(1) Before the inflectional suffix ~e, only initial consonant of the stem remains as the base and all other constituents are dropped, e.g.

jUko + e > j ~e 'whoever' (Obl.)

Otherwise the base contains the initial consonant plus the vowel ~I. e.g.

- (ii) The co-relative se 'that one' has supplative base t- in the oblique.
- (111) The relative pronoun juko 'whoever' has alternative form jiki.
 - (iv) The interrogative pronoun kok 'some one' has the alternative form koy(k)

Here are the paradigms of the pronouns of this class:

Relative juko ojlki 'whoever'

<u>Sg.</u> <u>Pl.</u>

Obl. jI-ni

j-0

Co-relative se 'that one'

8g. <u>F1</u>.

Nom.

Obl. ti-ni

Interrogative animate ker 'who'

Sg. Pl.

Nom. ker

Obl. kI-n kI-ni

k-e

Indefinite	kok * koy (k)	'some one'
	Sg.	<u>P1.</u>
Nom.	kok **	koy(k)
ON	bī-m	kī-ni

k-0

It should be noted that the oblique for k -e is identical in the interrogative animate and in the --

4.5.4 Class-4.

indefinite.

In this class, there are only two pronouns, i.e. interrogative in animate and collective.

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the pronouns of this class.

		Non	061.
Interrogative	inanimate		-000 -Ø-
A 33 - A 4 - A			7

The following morphophonemic changes take place before adding the inflectional suffixes:

- (i) The final vowel is dropped.
- (11) The final syllable of the interrogative inuniques is dropped before -/

The payradigm s of both the pronouns are given below:

Interrogativ	e inam	Imate	kuro	'what'
Nom.		kUro		
Ob1.		kUr-e	oo kU-Ø	
Collective	mIre		everyth	ing, all
Nova		mTro		

mlr-ī

4.6 The inflectional suffix-morphomes and their allowrphs.

Obl.

1-11

It has already been mentioned that the nominative singular, being identical with the stem, is expressed by the absence of any inflectional suffix. The remaining -- suffix-morphemes along with their allomorphs are listed below:-

ENom.Pl.] /i/ after the pronouns of Class-1.

EObl. Sg.] /u/ after the first person.

/-n/ after the pronouns of class-2,3.

EObl.Pl.] /.a/ after the pronouns of Class-1.

/-ni/ after the pronouns of Class-2,3.

EObl. J /-e/ after the pronouns of Class-3.

/-e/ after interrogative inanimate.

/-#/ after interrogative inanimate.

after the collective.

CHAPTER

5

ADJECTIVE

5.1 Adjectives, Substantives and Indeclinables:

In Kachi, the adjective is a syntactical rather than a morphological form-class. The morphological construction of an adjective is similar either to the substantive (declinable adjectives) or to the indeclinable (indeclinable adjectives). For example, the adjective / khaso/ 'good' is inflected like the substantive /goro/ 'horse'. Similarly the adjective /sakhat/ 'hard' is like the indeclinable /ber/ 'outside'. The comparable paradigms are given below:

Substantive	/goro/ 'horse'	Adjective /khaso/
Nom. Sg.	goro	khaso
Nom. Pl.	gor-a	khao-a
Voc. Sg.	gor-a	khas-a
Voc. Pl.	gor-a	khas-a
0b1. Sg.	gor-e	khas-e
061. Pl.	eor-e	khas-ë

Indeclinable /bar/ 'out-side'

chokro	bar	V.y.0	(Nom. Sg.)	' a boy went out-side '
chokra	bar	v-yra	(Nom. Pl.)	' the boys went out-side '
chokre	bar	që	(Obl.Sg.)	'a boy told out-side '
chokre	bar	csca	(Obl. Pl.)	'the boys told out-side'

	Adjective	sakhat	' hard '
sakhat	lokro	(Nom. Sg.)	'hard wood'
sakhat	lokra	(Nom. Pl.)	'hard bamboos'
sakhat	lakreme	(0b1.8g.)	'in the hard bamboo'
sakhat	lekrê mê	(Obl.Pl.)	'in the hard bamboos'

The paradigms show that the morphological construction of one kind of adjectives is identical with that of a class of the substantives and the construction of the other kind of the adjectives is identical with that of the indeclinables.

Here it is necessary to mention those points which show some difference between the substantives and the adjectives.

The declinable mesculine adjectives always end with -o or -u (after a masal or masalised in the polly - Syllabic words) and the declinable feminine adjectives always end with -1. Hence the mas, adj, are compareable to the -o or -u ending musculine substantives and -i ending feminine substantives.

The points which mark the distinction between the substantives and the adjectives are listed below:

(i) The declinable adjectives are always derived. They are not simple, which is not true in the case of substantives.

(ii) The gender is a derivational category in the adjectives. Both the mesculine and the feminine are derived from a common neuteral base, e.g.

khas-o 'good' (mas.)
khas-i 'good' (fem.)

But this is not true for the substantives, for example /bo/ 'worshipper' and /taro/ 'star' are inherently masculine and they have no feminine counter part.

(111) The gender is predictable in the declinable adjectives, i.e. -o and -u ending adjectives are always masculine while -i ending are always feminine, e.g.,

khaso 'good(mas)' khasi 'good' (fem.)
sen u 'thin(mas.)' seni 'thin'(fem.)

But in the substantive there is no such rule. Here are some examples:

/bo/ (mms.) 'worshipper'

/so/ (fem.) 'show, function'

/gIro/ (mms.) 'planet'

/pIro/ (fem.) 'dawn'

/moti/ (mms.) 'pearl'

/kUti/ (fem.) 'bitch'

(iv) Every declinable adjective, necessarily is de - elined in three cases - the nominative, the vocative and the

oblique- and in two numbers, that is singular and plural.
But there are -o or -u ending substantives which have
contrast only between the stem and the oblique plural,
e.g. /po/ 'dung' /maru/ person etc.,

		Sc.	<u>P1</u> .
Nom.		/po/	/po/
		/maru/	/maru/
Voc.		/po/	/po/
		/maru/	/maru/
061.	*	/po/	/po-ë/
		/mar u/	/maru-e/

Now, it would be clear that the declinable adjectives are not identical in behaviour with the comparable substantives. Hence they are treated separately from the substantives.

The indeclinable adjectives, however are not distinguished from the other indeclinables. But they also are treated together with the declinable adjectives only for the sake of convenience. It should be noted that the syntactical behaviour of the indeclinable adjectives is exactly like that of declinable adjectives.

5.2 Classification of adjectives:

all the adjectives are divided into three classes declinable, indeclinable and the cardinal numberals.

all the -o and -u (nasalized or after a nasal)
ending adjective (except cardinal numerals) come under the
class of declinable adjectives. All other adjectives
(except numerals) come under the class of indeclinable
adjectives. The cardinal numerals are described in a
separate class.

5.8 Inflection of the declinable adjectives:

The declinable adjectives, express three grammatical categories, the gender (masculine and feminine) the
number (singular and plural) and the case (now. voc. and
obl.). All the categories are inflectional and these
adjectives are declineable according to them, for the declinsion, the inflectional suffixes are added to the stem
(A-stem). The same suffix stands for the gender, the number and the case.

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the A-stems of this class:

	Se. Mas.	<u>P1</u> .	SR. Fe	<u>Pl.</u>
Nom.	-0,u	-a	-1	-ũ
Voc.	+a	-a	-1	-u
061.	~0	-ë	-1	-ë-1

The paradigms of some adjectives are given below.

The paradigms are given along with a substantive.

(Mas.)	khaso	ehokro	a	good	boy1	etc.,

	(788.)	thaso enour	, a good p	oy ecc.,
	Sg.		<u>P1</u> .	
Nom.	khes-o	ehokro	khas-a	chokr-a
Voc.	khas-a	chokr-a	khas-a	chokr-a
061.	khas-e	chokr-e	khas-õ	chokr-e
	kan-u che	okro ' one	yed boy	
	SH.		<u>P1</u> .	
Nom.	kan-u	ehokro .	kan-a	chokr-a
Voc.	ken-e	ehokra	kan-e	chokr-a
061.	ken-e	ehokre	kan-ë	chokr-s
	(fem) k	hasi chokri	a good girl	' etc.,
	Se.		<u>P1</u> .	
Hom.	khas-i	ehokri	khasy-ũ	ehokry-ũ
Voc.	khas-i	chokri	khasy-u	chokry-ũ
061.	khas-i	ehokr-i	khasi-e-	chokri-ë

kani chokri ' one eyed girl '

	Bg.		<u>P1</u> .	
Nom.	kan-i	ehokri	kany-u	chokry-u
Voc.	kan-i	enokr-i	kany-u	ehokry-ũ
061.	kan-i	ehokr-1	kani-e"	chokri-ë

5.4 The inflectional suffix-morphemes and their alloworphs:

Due to three-fold contrast of case, two-fold contrast of number and two-fold contrast of gender, there are 12 suffix-morphemes, out of which six are for the - masculine and six are for the feminine forms. In the masculine, the suffixes for voc. sg, voc. pl. and now. pl. are homo-phonous, similarly in the feminine, nom.sg. voc.sg. and obl. sg; nom.pl. and voc.pl. are homo-phonous.

.o nom. mas. Sg.

-a nom. mas. Pl.

-a voc. mas. Sg.

-a voc. mas. Pl.

e obl. mas. Sg.

e obl. mas. Fl.

-1 nom. fem. Sg.

-1 voc. fem. Sg.

-1 obl. fem. Ng.

-u nom. fem. Pl.

-u voc. fem. Pl.

-ë obl. fem. Pl.

5.5 Numerals:

This section covers the description of cordinal numerals.

The following is the list of cardinal numerals:

hlkro	111	penj-i- pec-i	1851
69	121	cha-i ~cha-vi	1881
ea tre	181	satya-i ~satya-vi	1271
car	141	othya-1 -othya-vi	1881
tned the	161	ogan-tri	1891
cho	161	tri	1801
set	171	ek-tri	1311
oth	181	So-tri	1381
nõ	(91	t3-tri	1881
do	1101	eő-tri	1841
lgya-ro	'11'	pă-tri	1381
ба-го	'12	cho-tri	1361
te-ro	1131	sepen-tri	1371
co-do	1241	anen-tri	1881
pen-ro	1151	ogen-cali	1391
so-ro	*16	cal1	1401
set-ro	'17'	ek-tali	1411
ay-ro	1181	be-tali	1421
Una-1	1191	tro-tali	1431
vi vi	1201	cUm-ali	1441
Ika-i- ek-vi	1231	pUs-tali	1451
ba-i- ba-vi	1881	chē-tali	1461
tre-i-tre-vi	1881	son-teli	1471
co-i- co-vi	1841	en-tali	1481

ogen-penja	1491	sat-oter	1771
penja	1001	oth-oter	1781
ek-aven	1511	ogna-ësī	1791
5-aven	1581	esi	180
trd-pah	1831	ok-yasi	1811
eo-pan	1541	5-yaci	1881
ple-evan	156.1	tr-yasi	1831
cha-pan	1561	epr-yasi	1841
set-aven	1871	ple-yasi	1851
oth-avon	1681	ch-yasi	1861
ogen-seth	1591	slt-yasi	1871
soth	1601	i th-yasi	1881
ek-soth	1611	nīv-yasi	1891
Sa-soth	1621	neva	1901
tre-soth	1681	ek-anu	1921
co-soth	1641	6-anu	1991
pa-aoth	1651	tr-anu - try-anu	1931
cha-soth	1661	eory-anu	1941
san-sath	1671	ple-spu	1951
on-soth	1681	eha-nu	1961
oganu-sinter	1691	sot-anu	1971
sInter	1701	oth-enu	1981
ek-oter	1711	nav-anu	1991
50-üter	1721	50	1001
tro-üter	1731	hadau	10001
eUm-oter .	1741	hojar	*100000*
ple-oter	1751	lakh	100000
cha-uter	1761	klron	12000000001

Fraction

pa 1/4	ded 13	
od 1/0	odi si	
ponu 8	sada-	4
Sava 1	2	

The cardinal numerals above So 'hundred' and coming between hejar 'thousand', lekh 'a hundred thousand' KIron 'a hundred lac', are formed by syntactical con - struction in which the normal cardinal numerals (i.e. from 1 to 100) are combined. For example:

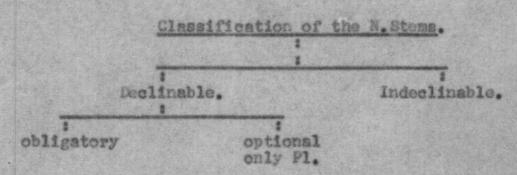
hlkro So cali 'one hundred forty'
be So Seth 'two hundred sixty'
car hejar be so cali 'four thousand, two hundred forty'

Similarly all other fractions are formed with the help of sova ' quarter', sada 'half', pona (Pl.of ponu) 'three quarters'. These fractions are put before the complete figure. For instance:

sava tri 'a quarter and three'
sava car 'a quarter and four'
sada tri 'a half and three'
sada car 'a half and four'
pana tri 'two and three quarters'
pona car 'three and three quarters'

5.6 Grammatical categories expressed by the numerals.

The cardinal numerals express two grammatical categories: the case (nom. and obl.) and the number (sg. and pl). The numerals are declined according to these grammatical categories. For the declension, the inflectional case, Suffix, which stands for the number also, is added to the numeral-stem (N. stem). Except hikro 'one' all other numerals do not distinguish the gender category.



- (a) only Sg.
- (b) only Pl. definite
- (c) only Pl. indefinite
- (d) Sg. and Pl.

put into two groups, declinable and indeclinable. The declinable N. stems are again divided into two classes, obligatory and optional. The N. Stems of the obligatory class are necessarily declined but the N. stems of optional class, optionally take the inflectional suffixes, e.g. trd 'three' can be used in the following way :-

In the inflected form (Obl. Pl.)

tr-I chokr-e ke 'to the three boys'

In the uninflected form:

tr3 chokr-e ke 'to the three boys'

The N. stems of the optional class always occur in the plural form, while the N. stems of Obligatory class, are divided into the following sub-classes:-

- (a) Occurring only in the singular form, hikro 'one' comes under this sub-class.
- (b) Which are used as the definite plural only, sada 'half' comes under this sub-class.
- (c) which are used as the indefinite plural;

 So 'hundred' hejar 'thousand'

 lakh 'lac' and kiron 'a hundred lacs; come

 under this sub-class.
- (d) Which occur in both the numbers:

 ponu 'three quarters' comes under this subclass.

In the numberals of sub-class (a), the contrast remains only between the B. stem and the oblique Singular (mas. and fem.). The numerals of the sub-classes (b) and (c) exhibit the contrast between the B. stem and the oblique plural (definite and indefinite). The numerals of

sub-class (d) alone show the full contrast, i.e. the contrast between two cases- nominative and oblique-; and in each case the contrast between two numbers, singular and plural.

the plural form, hence the contrast remains between the N.stem and the oblique plural only.

The numerals So ' hundred' hejar 'thousand'
lekh 'lac' and kiron 'a hundred lac' are used in both
the classes, i.e. in the obligatory and optional. When
they are used alone, they express indefinite plural number
and they are included in the obligatory class. But when
they are preceded by some definite numeral, they express
the definite plural number and behave like the numerals
of optional class. It has been noted that in both the
situations, they take the same inflectional suffix. If
the preceding definite numeral is inflected, these numerals
are necessarily inflected. When the preceding definite
numeral is hikpo 'one' these numerals are not -inflected, e.g.

hIkro So (Sg.) 'one hundred'
hIkro hajar (sg.) 'one thousand'
hIkro lakh (Sg.) 'a hundred thousand'
hIkro kiron (Sg.) 'a hundred lac'

Def. Pl. preceding definite numeral uninflected:

	-				
tra Sc)" so-e	ko	1 50	three	hundred'

Def. Pl. preceding definite numeral inflected;

	Carlotte Market					
tr-1	80-0	ke	to	three	hundred!	1

Indeffinite Pl.

So-ë	maria	'hundreds of people'
hajar-ë	maru	'thousands of people'
lokh-ë	maru	'lack of people'
klron-ë	"	'millions of people'

The following inflectional suffixes are added to all the declinable (obligatory and optional) N. Stems.

	Se.	<u>P1.</u>
Nom.		-a (obligatory (d) mas.)
		-ũ (obligatory (d) fem.)
		-/ (elsewhere)
06.	-e (obligatory (a) mas.)	-ē (with all)
	-Ø (obligatory (a) fem.)	

The examples of all kinds of declinable numerals, along with a substantive, are given below:

Obligatory (a)

hlkre chokre ke co (obl. Sg. mas.) 'one boy says '
hlkre chokre ke co (obl. Sg. mas.) 'say to one boy'
hlkri chokri cs ti (nom. Sg. fem) 'one girl says'
hlkri-Ø chokri ke co (obl. Sg. fem.) 'say to one girl'

Obligatory (b)

sad-e tre ama (nom. Pl.) 'three and half mangoes'
sad-e tr-i ame me (obl. Pl.) 'in three and half mangoes'

Obligatory (c)

hajar-# maru (nom. Pl.) 'a thousand people'
hajar-e maru (indef.Obl.Pl.) 'thousands of people'

Obligatory (d)

ponin kam (nom. mas. Sg.) 'three quarter work'

pon-e kam me (obl.mas. Sg.) 'in three quarter work'

pon-a ba (Nom.mas. Pl.) 'one and three quarters'

pon-e b-i me (obl. mas.Pl.) 'in one and three quarters'

poni varta (Nom.fem. Sg.) 'a (three quarters) story'

poni-0 vartame (Obl.fem.Sg.) 'in a (three quarters)

Detional:

tri-i-tri chokr-s Ke (obl.mas.Pl.) ' to three boys'

cali chokr-s (Noc. mas. Pl.) ' forty boys'

cali-c-celi chokr-s Ke (obl.mas.Pl.) 'to the forty boys'

5.7 Allosorphs of N. Stem.

-o, -s ending, show an alloworphs with the loss of the final vowel before the inflectional suffix, e.g.

trg + I = tr-I 'three' (Obl. Pl.)

59 + I = 5-I 'two' (Obl. Pl.)

elloworph with -o in place of -o before the inflectional suffixes, e.g.

do + e = do-e 'ten' (Obl.Fl.)

2. The A. stone having -Vi final sequence take additional glide -y- before the inflectional suffixes:

trei . 5 m treiy-5 'twenty three'(0:1.Pl.)

coi + e = coiy-e 'twenty four' (Obl. Pl.)
satyai+e = satyaiy-e 'twenty seven' (Obl. Pl.)

4. S.Stem car 'four' has an allomorph es- before the inflectional suffix, e.g.

cer-1 = co-1 'four' (Obl. Pl.)

b. N. Stem panj 'five' has an allomorph with the loss of final consonant before the inflectional suffix.e.g. panj + e = pan-e 'five' (Obl.Pl.)

6. The vowel ->- of the poly. syllabic N. Stems, is dropped before the inflectional suffixes, provided the vowel -a- is not in the preceding syllable, e.g.

copen + e = corn-e 'fifty four ' (Obl.Pl.)

tropen + e = trope-e 'fifty three' (Obl.Pl.)

chapan + e = chape-e 'fifty six' (Obl. Pl.)

bavan + e = bavan-e 'fifty two' (Obl. Pl.)

Allomorphs of the suffix morphemes.

The Obl.Pl. suffix -e has an alloworph -i which is added to the N. stems be 'two', trd' three, and car 'four'.

电极影响和水南等

CHAPTER

6

VERB-ROOT

6.1 Description of verb-root.

A verbal form (the inflected form of verb) in Eachi, consists of a verb-stem (hereafter refered to as V-stem) and the personal suffix (hereafter refered to as p.suf.) The p. suf. is the inflectional suffix. In the imperative mood, the second person singular is expressed by the absence of any personal suffix.

The V.stem, may be simple or derived. The simple V.stem is identical with the verb-root (hereafter refered to as V.root). Thus when the inflectional suffixes are removed from a verbal form, we get the V.stem, and when all the inflectional as well as derivational suffixes are removed from a verbal form, we obtain the V.root, e.g.,

hi gadi hol-a-ra-id-o 'he will cause (one) to get cart moved'

Here, hel-a-re-id-o is a verbal form. The last -o suffix is the personal suffix which indicates third - person, masculine, singular. When this inflectional - suffix is removed, the remaining form-hel-a-ra-id- is a derived V. stem, containing three derivational suffixes, viz., -a- the first causal, -ra- the second causal and

-Id- the future marker. When we remove these derivational suffixes from the V.stem hel-a-ra-Id-, we obtain the form hel- 'move' which is the V.root.

The V.root, by its description, is always monomorphemic. It alone can function as the imperative secondperson singular, e.g.

tu hal (Imp. 2 Sg.) ' (you) move '

Here, /hal/ is a V.root which functions as the imperative, second person, Singular.

6.2 Phonological structure of V.root:

6.2.1 Syllabic pattern:

The V.root, in its unmodified form, has at least one syllable and at the most two. Most of the V.roots are mono-syllabic. The very common syllabic pattern in the mono-syllabic roots is CVC (e.g. has hal' move') Similarly the common pattern in the di-syllabic roots is CVC V C V C (e.g. kalap 'create').

The syllabic patterns found in the V.roots are as follows:

(8)	In the	mono-sylladi	e roots:	
CA	/pi/	'drink'	/eu/	'chew'
CVC	/hal/	'move'	/391/	'hold'
VC	/90/	'come'	/ak/	'mark'

COVCC	/khang/	'cough'	/ehand/	'clean with a
ceve	/nyar/	'look'	/trIm/	cloth'
CVCC	/rokh/	'put'	/kamp/	'thrill'

(11) d1-syllabic

VCV	/Ub1/ 'stand u	ap t	
VCCV	/Uthi/ 'get up'		
cveve	/koter/ 'carve'	/kamay/	'earn'
veve	/atak/ 'stop'	/arad/	'worship'
CVCCVC	/singar/ 'decors	ate' /lolkar/	'challenge'
vevec	/aramb/ 'bogin'	/akars/	'attract'
VCCVC	/angor/ 'bathe'	/ejmay/	'test, examine'
CVVC	/Buar/ 'sweep'		
CCVCVC	/khlsak/ ' slip'		

6.2.2 Distribution of vowels and consonants within a V.root.

A V.root may begin with a vowel or consonant.

Similarly it may end with a vowel or consonant. Among the vowels, / a I N o / occur only in the beginning and /i a :

o / occur only at the end of the V.roots. Only /a/ and /u/ have been found at both the positions i.e. initial and final.

with the general limitations of distribution, all the consonants (except /y/) can occur in the beginning as well as at the end of the V.roots. /y/ occurs only at the end of the V.roots.

The examples are as follows:

	Beginning		End	
Vowels				
a-	/90/	'come'		
	/64/	'boild'		
1-	/Ich/	'desire'	•	
U	/Upat/	'open'	•	
	/va/	'fly'		
0-	/ot/	'pour'		
	/ok/	'vomit'		
a-	/arad/	'worship'	/kha/	'eat'
	/ak/	'merk'		
-1			/Uth1/	'stand- up '
			/p1/	'drink'
-0		,	/ve/	'sit'
-3	•		/38/	'give'
			/vs/	'flow'
u	/chu/	'touch'	/ug/	'elean'
	/du/	'wash'	/ug/	'cover'
0			/00/	'say
A STATE OF			/10/	*come

Consonan	Beginning te:		End.	
Consonan	tet			
k	/ket/	'cut'	/bak/	'gabble'
g	/gIn/	'take'	/208/	'strike'
e	/2001	'liek'	/nee/	'dance'
3	/302/	'hold'	/v13/	'put in '
•	/tor/	'go away'	/ket/	'eut'
9	/dok/	'cover'	/eund/	'select'
ā	/38/	'give'	/vā/	'fly'
t	/tor/	'owim'	/31%/	'win'
d	/dor/	· Pun'	/20d/	'eook'
р	/poker/	'catch'	/ksp/	'cut'
ь	/bor/	'fill'	/10b/	'find
-ñ			/me*n/.	'beg'
- p			/hon/	'strike'
n	/nom/	*bow down*	/men/	'obey'
m	/mor/	'knit'	/eUm/	'kiss'
P	/rokh/	'put'	/mor/	'die'
7			/cer/	'elimb'
-1	/lekh/	'count'	/ha1/	'move'
6	/sod/	'invent'	/pos/	'bring up '
h	/har/	'pour down'	/haph/	'gasp'
٧	/vIn/	1 -801	/3IV/	'drip'
y			/doy/	'milk'

6.2.3 <u>Vowel Sequences and consonant clusters within</u> the V. root.

No vowel sequence has been found within a V.root, except /buar/ 'sweep'. The consonant clusters, of course, have been observed within the V.roots. The description of consonant clusters is as follows:

Initial clusters:

Normally the initial clusters within a V.root are ef a stop + h (i.e. ph., th-, etc.) only two roots /nyar/ 'look' /trlm/ 'drip' have been found in which there is no cluster of a stop and -h.

Final clusters:

In the final position, the cluster is always between a stop and the homo-organic nasal or between stop and -h; e.g.

/khang/	'cough'	/eund/	'select'
/sand/	'eonnect'	/kemp/	'thrill'
/rokh/	'put'	/puch/	'ask'

Medial clusters:

The medial clusters are only in the di-syllabic roots; and these are always at the syllabic boundary.

The roots containing medial clusters are also not many; only a dozen or so have been found in the whole data.

These roots are as follows:

/totray/ 'stammer' /postay/ 'repent'
/engor/ 'bathe' /elmay/ 'test'

'condemn' /dominays/ 'threaten' /terchor/ 'order' /ranjer/ 'offend' /phormay/ 'remember' /sambar/ /lolkar/ 'challenge' /sIngar/ 'decorate' /manday/ 'limp'

6.2.4 Dropping of -a-

The vowel /a/, in the final syllable of the disyllabic roots is dropped, When the root is followed by the suffix begining with a vowel; e.g.

parakh-ij (fut. Imp. Sig.) 'examine' (Fut. Imp.)

parkh-a (causal) 'cause to examine'

parakh-nu (infinitive) ' to examine'

The above rule is not applicable to the V.roots having a consonant cluster as the code of the nucle : e.g.

aramb-ij (fut.Imp. 2Sg.) 'begin'
aramb-a (causal) 'cause to begin'
aramb-nu (infinitive) 'to begin'

6.2.5 Addition of glide -y :

The polly syllabic V.roots or V. stems, ending with vowel -a, take glide -y when they are used as the free utterrances, e.g.

kema (V.root) 'earn'

kema(-y)	(Imp. 2 Sg.)	'you earn'
kema-ra-(y)	(Imp. 2 Sg.)	'cause to earh'
kema-ra-ra(-y)	(Imp. 2 Sg.)	'cause (one) to make some one earn.'
hel	(V.root)	'move'
hol-a-(y)	(Imp. 2 Sg.)	'cause to move'
hol-a-ra-(y)	(Imp. 2 Sg.)	'cause (one) to make some one move'

6.8 Classification of V. roots:

viz. intransitive (Int.) and transitive (tr.). It is a nature of the V.root (Int. or tr.) is decided on the basis of the verb-inflection in the past-tense. In the past tense, there are two criteria for deciding the nature of the root: one is morphological and the other is syntactical. Under the morphological criterion, the Int. and the tr. roots take different sets of personal suffixes for the verb-inflection. Under the syntactical criterion, the Int. roots always have the subject in the nominative case while the tr. roots may have the subject in the nominative or in the oblique case; e.g.

u hol-y-o (Int. S m. Sg.) ' (he) moved' u/un jol-\$-\tilde{e} (tr. S m. Sg.) ' (he) held '

The distinction of Int. and tr. with a few - exceptions is morphologically exhibited in all the deeli-nable formations, viz. Imperative, (Imp.) Future Imperative (Fut. Imp) Subjunctive, past and future; and two indeeli-

nable formations, Viz. future 2 and gerundive. The distinction of Int. and tr. is not morphologically exhibited in two indeclinable formation viz. past conjunctive and inifinite.

For illustration, we take / hal/ 'move' to represent the sent the Int. V.roots and / jal/ 'hold' to represent the tr. V.roots.

6.4 The formations in which the distinction of Int.
and tr. is morphologically exhibited:

Imperative:

hel-o (Int. 2 Pl.) 'you move'

jel-yo (tr. 2 Pl.) ' you hold'

Future-imperative:

hel-ja (Int. 2 Pl.) 'you move' (hereafter)

jel-ija (tr. 2 Pl.) 'you hold' (hereafter)

Subjective:

hel-a (Int. 1 Sg.) ' I may move '

jel-iya (tr. 1 sg.) 'I may hold'

Puture:

hol-nd-o(se) (Int. 1 Sg.) ' I shell move '

jel-id-o (se) (tr. 1 Sg.) ' I shall hold'

Past:

hal-y-o (Int. 3 Sg.) 'he moved'

jol-Ø-ē (tr. 3 Sg.) 'he held '

Future 2 (Indeclinable)

hal-bo (Int. 1 Pl.) 'we shall move '

jal-150 (tr. 1 Pl.) 'we shall hold'

Gerundive (Indeclinable)

hal-je (Int.) '(it) should be moved'

jal-ije (tr.) '(it) should be held'

6.5. The formations in which the distinction between lnt. and fr. is not maintained.

Post conjunctive:

hal (Int.) 'move'

hal-i 'having moved'

jel (tr) 'hold'

jol-i 'having hold'

Infinitive:

hel (Int.) 'move'

hal-nu 'to move'

jol (tr) 'hold'

Jol-nu 'to hold'

6.6 Exceptional Int. | roots:

In the int.roots, the exceptional root is only /se/ 'come', which behaves like a tr. root in the future-Imperative, e.g.

ec (root) 'come'

oc-ja (future-Imp. 2 Sg.) 'You come (hereafter) '

(future-Imp. 2 Sg.) 'You come (hereafter) '

6.7 Exceptional tr. roots:

(a) /kha/ 'eat', a tr. root behavex like an Int. root in the future -Imp. e.g.

kha (root) 'eat'

kha-j (futur-Imp.2 Sg.) 'you eat (hereafter)'

kha-ja (futur-Imp.2 Pl.) 'you eat (hereafter)'

(b) The following tr. roots behave like the Int. roots in all the formations other than past:

take 'put' /gIn/ /rakh/ /dls/ 1 see 1 'say' /00/ 'write' 'lift up' /11kh/ /khan/ 'sell' /vI3/ 'put-in' /vIkan/ 'hear' /han/ *strike* /sun/ /orakh/ 'touch' 'recognize' /ehu/ 'beg' 'find' /100/ /pln/ /slinen/ 'recognize' /jan/ *know*

To illustrate, we take the root, /rakh/ 'put'

rokh-o (Imperative 2 Pl.) 'you put'

rakh-ja (fut. Imp. 2 Pl.) 'you put(hereafter)

rokh-o (Subjective 2 Pl.) ' you may put'

rekh-nd-a (future 2 Pl.) 'you will put'
rekh-bo (future-2 l Pl.) '; We shall put'
rekh-je (Gerundive) 'it should be put'
rekh-y-a (past 2 Pl.) 'you put '

(c) The following tr. roots can be used as tr. and Int. in all the formations other than past:

/slb/ 'sew' /bed/ 'tie'
/Ich/ 'desire' /limb/ 'besmear'

For an illustration, we take the root /slb/ 'sew' slb-o - slb-yo (Imp. 2Pl.) 'you sew' slb-ja ~ slb-ija (fut.imp.2Pl.) 'you sew (hereafter)' slb-o - slb-yo (subjunctive 2Pl) 'you may sew' slb-nd-a - slb-ide-a (future 2 Pl.) 'you will sew' slb-bo - slb-ibo (future 2 Pl.) 'we shall sew' slb-je - slb-ije (gerundive) 'it should be sewn' slb-y-a (past. 2Pl.) 'you sewed'

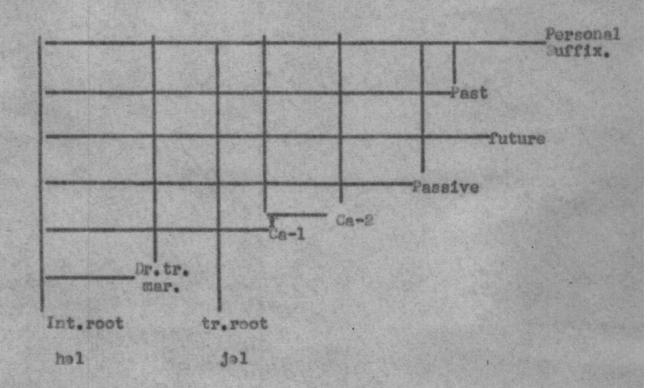
* 中华安全市市市市市市

CHAPTER

7

VERB-STEM

7.0 A graph showing the formation of verb stems:

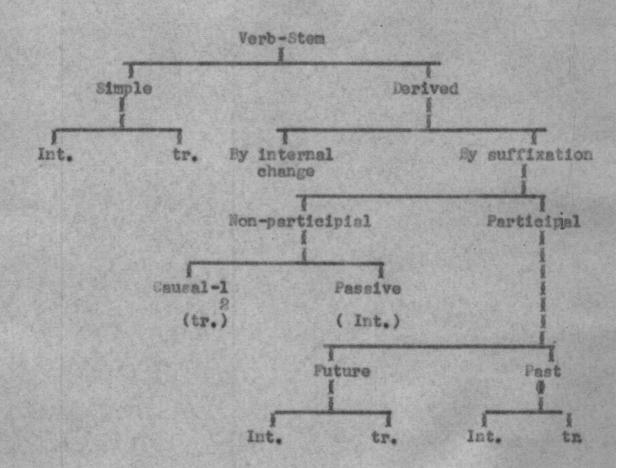


Directions:

Start from Int. or tr. roots towards personal Suffix, always moving upwards or to the right on the path, marked by the lines.

Classification of vorb stems contd..

7.1 A graph showing the Classification of verb-stems:



7.2 Classification of verb-stems:

It has already been stated that a verbal form in Kachi consists of a verb stem (V.stem) and a personal suffix. All the V. stems, from the formation point of view, are divided into two classes: Simple and derived. The derived stems are again divided into two categories, (a) stems which are derived through the process of internal change (these V.stems are transitive), and (b) stems which are derived through the process of suffixation. Stems derived by suffixing are of two types:

(1) Non-participal- stems which are inflected only

as the verbal form, and

(ii) Participal - the stems which are inflected as substantives or adjectives besides being inflected as ted as verbs.

or passive. The causal forms are transitive while the passive forms are intransitive. The participal V. stems are future participle and past participle. The future participle may be intransitive or transitive; Similarly the past participle may be intransitive or transitive.

7.3 Simple intransitive and transitive V. stems: .

The simple intransitive and transitive V.stems are identical with the transitive and transitive V.roots respectively, e.g.,

hel (Int.root) 'move'
hel-a 'I may move'

jel (tr.root) 'hold'

jel-iya I may hold !

In the above examples, hel-a is a verbal form, having -a a personal suffix which indicates subjunctive mood, first person singular. By removing this suffix, we get the V.stem hel - which is identical with the V.root /hel/. Similarly, in the verbal form jel-iya, -iya is the personal suffix which expresses subjunctive mood, first

7.c V. Stems derived by internal change:

The internal change takes place only in some of the intransitive v.roots. The change may be in the form of either the replacement of a sound (i.e. vowel or consonant or both) or the lose of sound (i.e. vowel or consonant or both) or it may be both, replacement as well as loss. The V.stems which are derived by internal change are transitive.

The examples of internal change are as follows: Replacement of vowel

/tor/	(Int.)	'swim'
/tar/	(tr.)	'make (one) swim'
/202/	(Int.)	'die'
/mar/	(tr.)	'kill'

Similarly

/ther/	'be calm'	/bor/	'be burnt'
1202/	'be melt'	/202/	'be spoiled'
1002/	'be nourshied'	/tar/	'be away'
/esr/	grazo'	/ker/	'be boiled'
/gujer/	'pase away'	/rebra/	'be alright'

Similarly:

Loss of consonant:

1-11 4- -01

/visam/ (Int.) 'be extinguished'

/vIsa(y)/ (tr.) 'extinguish'

Loss of Syllable and replacement of a consonant:

/-n- <- n/ +/-am <- Ø/

/jonom/ (Int.) 'take birth'

/jan/ (tr.) 'give birth'

7.5 Causal:

Causal is a non-participlial derived V. stem, which is derived by suffixation. All the causal stems are tr. for these are inflected as the tr. stems.

7.5.1 Formation:

The causal is divided into two parts, the first causal and the second causal. The second causal is depending on the first causal, because while forming the second causal, it is obligatory to from the first causal.

7.5.2 First causal:

The first causal is formed by adding the causal morpheme / E -ca-1 = T to the Tr. V.roots, Int. V.roots, and the tr. V.stems derived by internal change. The causal morpheme has three alloworphs which are -

morphologically conditioned. These are as follows:

/-ra/ is added to those V.roots or derived V.stems, which end with the vowel -a, -b, and -6.

/-a/ is added to all those V.roots and the derived V.stems which end with a consonant.

/-ar/ is added to those V.roots and the derived V.

stems which end with any vowel other than -a,o, .

Exceptionally -ar is added to a few such roots
as donot end with any vowel.

-a ending:

'cause to extinguish'

-o ending:

VIsa-ra

ro (Int.) 'stay'
ro-ra 'cause to stay'
co (tr.) 'say'
co-ra 'cause to say'

-3 ending:

se (Int.) 'bear'

3-pa to bear

vs (Int.) 'flow'

v3-ra 'cause to flow'

/-a/ is added to the roots ending with a consonant,

As, most of the roots end with consonants, this
alloworph, in comparison to other alloworphs,

has much more frequency, e.g.,

hel (Int.root) 'move'

hel-a(y) cause to move!

jel (tr.root) 'hold'

jol-a(y) 'cause to hold'

mar (Derived tr.) 'kill'

mar-a(y) 'cause to kill'

/-ar/ is added to the int. roots ending with a vowel other than -a, o, -3. eg.

-1 ending

Uthi (root) 'stand up'

Uthy-ar 'cause to stand up'

Ubi (root) 'stop'

Uby-ar 'cause to stop'

-u ending

ru (root) 'weep'

ru-ar 'cause to weep'

-e ending -

ve (root) 'sit'

vy-ar 'cause to sit'

There are some tr. roots ending with the vowels -i, -u, -e which optionally take -ar or ra- suffixes, e.g.,

-i ending

pi (root) 'drink'

py-ar- pi-ra 'cause to drink

-u ending

du (root) 'wash'

du-ar-du-ra 'cause to wash'

-e ending

de (root) 'give'

dy-ar: de-ra 'cause to give'

Following are the exceptional roots which take--ar suffix:

vēj 'bathe'

vej-ar 'cause to bathe'

sUm 'sleep'

sUs-ar 'cause to sleep'

7.5.3 Second causal:

The second causal is formed by adding the causal morphome symbolized as Eca-2.7 to the first causal. The second causal has two allomorphs: /-a/ and /-ra/. I he allomorph /-a/ is added to these first causal stems which end with -ar. The allomorph/-ra/ is added to the remaining first causal stems.

(a) Additiona of /-a/

Uthy-ar (ca-1) 'cause to stand up!

Uthy-ar-a(y)(ca-2) 'cause(one) to get(some)

stand up

(b) Addition of /-ra/

hal-a (cs-1) 'cause to move'

hal-a-ra(y) (ca-2) 'cause (one) to get (some one) moved'

jel-a (ca-1) 'cause to hold'

jel-a-ra(y) (ca-2) 'cause(one) to get (some one) held'

mar-a (ca-1) 'cause to kill'

mar-a-rafy) (ca-2) 'cause (one) to get (some one) killed'

post-a-ra- (ca-1) 'cause to repent'

past-a-rainl(ca-2) 'cause (one) to get (some one) repent'

(c) Optional addition of /-a/ of /-ra/

py-ar" pi-ra (ca-1) 'cause to drink'

py-ar-a - (ca-2) 'cause(one) to get pi-ra-ra (some one) drunk'

du-ar- (ca-1) 'cause to wash'

du-ar-a (ca-2) 'cause (one) to get du-ra-ra (some one) washed'

Note: -ra- causal has alternative from -va- before passive suffix.

7.6 Passive

The passive stems are non-participial derived V.stem. The passive stems are intransitive as they are declined like the intransitive stems. The passive formation is of two types: simple and compound. The simple passive is formed by adding the passive morpheme to the V.root or V.stem. The compound passive is formed with the help of auxiliaries.

7.6.1 Simple passive

The simple passive is formed by adding the passive morpheme, symbolized as *E-p_7* to any of the following V.roots or V.stems:

- (i) Int. V. roots.
- (11) Tr. V. roots.
- (111) Derived tr. V. stems.
- (iv) Causals (first and second)

The passive morphome has three elemorphs which are as follows:-

- /-j-/ Which is added to the all the above mentioned

 V.roots and V.stems, if the passive is to be

 used in the imperative and subjunctive moods.

 The passive is not formed in the future imperative mood.
- /-a/ Which is added to the transitive roots, intransitive roots and derived transitive stems, if

the passive forms are to be used in the future and the past formations.

/-0-/ Which is added to all the causal forms when the passive forms are to be used in the future and the past formations.

Hote: The passive alloworph /-j/ is different from the future imperative alloworph /-j/. Similarly the passive alloworph /-a/ is different from the causal alloworph /-a/.

(a) Addition of passive allosorph /-1/

In the imperative mood the passive is formed only from the causal stems, e.g.,

hol-a	(ca-1)	'cause to move'
hol-a-j	(passive)	'caused to be moved'
	(ca-2)	'cause (one) to get' (some one) moved'.
hol-a-ra-j	(passive)	'caused (one) to be got(some one)moved'
Jo1-a	(ca-1)	'cause to hold'
jol-aj	(passivo)	'caused to be held'
jal-a-ra	(ca-2)	'cause (one) to get (some one)held'
jel-a-ra-j-	(passive)	'caused (one) to be got (some one) held'
mar-a	(ca-1)	'cause to kill'
war-a-j	(passive)	'caused to be killed'

mar-ara (ca-2)

'cause (one) to get (some one) killed'

mar-a-ra-j (passive)

'caused (one) to be got (some one) killed'

The Subjunctive mood

In the subjunctive mood, the passive, formed from the Int. roots, has only one conjugation for all the persons and the numbers, i.e. the third person singular. But the passive has full paradigms like the active, when it is formed from the transitive roots or V. stems. There is one more difference also; if the passive is formed from the transitive roots or stems, the subject may remain in the nominative or oblique case but when the passive is formed from the intranstive roots, the subject always remains in the oblique case followed by the post-position-thi 'from'

		From intranstive	rooti	/na1/	'move'
(mū t	thi	,	(1	Sg.)	
(ssã	n)	(2	P1.)	
(to	n) hol-j-3	(8	Sg.)	'(it) may be
(ã	11)	(8	P1.)	moved by me/us etc.,
(Un	Ħ)	(3	Sg.)	
(Un1	11	1	(8	P1.)	

From transitive root: / jol / 'hold'

 jel-j-8 (8 Sg.) '(he) may be held'

From derived transitive: /mar/ 'kill'

mar-j-ã	(1 Sg.)	'(I) may be killed'
mar-j-ë	(2 Sg.)	'(you) may be killed'
mar-j-3	(3 8g.)	'(he) may be killed'

From first causal:

hol-a-j-a	(1 Sg.)	'(I) may be caused to be moved'
jol-a-j-ã	(1 Sg.)	'(I)may be caused to be held'
mar-a-j-ā	(1 Sg.),	'(I) may be caused to be killed'

From second causal:

həl-a-ra-j-ã	(1 Sg.	may be moved!	caused	to	be
jol-a-ra-j-ñ	(1 Sg.	may be held'	caused	to	bo
mar-a-ra-j-ã	(1 Sg.	may be		to	bo

(b) The addition of passive alloworth /-a/

The future formation

Like the Subjunctive, in the future and past, the passive formed from the intransitive roots, has only one conjugation for all the persons and the numbers, i.e. third person Singular; but the passive formed from the transitive roots or stems has full paradigms.

	From intransit	ive root: /hal/ 'move'
(mū thi	1)	(1 Sg.)
(əsã '	")	(1 Pl.)
(to) hel-a-d-o	(2 Sg.) 'will be moved by
(ã '	')	(2 Pl.) me/us etc.
(Un	")	(3 Sg.)

From transitive root: /jal/ 'hold'

(3 Pl.)

From derived transitive /mar/ 'kill'

mar-a-~d-o (se)	(1 Sg.)	'(I) shall be killed'
mar-a-"d-e	(2 Sg.)	'(you) will be killed'
mar-a-" d-o	(3 Sg.)	'(he) will be killed'

The past formation

The past marker, after passive, is /-n-/; and it is a phonological rule of Kachi that -o does not - occur after any nasal in the poly-Syllables; hence we get -u as the personal suffix, when otherwise -o occurs.

From intransitive root: / hal/ 'move'

From transitive root : / jol/ 'hold'

From derived transitive: /mar/ 'kill'

(c) The addition of allomorph /- 0 /

This passive allomorph is added to the causal stems in the future and the past formations. In these formations the passive is formed only from the second causal.

Future formation:

hal-a-ra (ca-2)
hal-a-ra-\$\beta^-d-o (se) (1 Sg.) '(I) shall be caused to be moved

hal-a-ra-Ø-~d-ä	(2 Sg.) '(you) will be caused to be moved'
hal-a-ra-Ø-~d-o	(3 Sg.) '(he) will be caused to be moved'
jol-a-ra	(cn-2)
jel-a-ra-Ø-~d-o (se)	(1 Sg.) '(I) shall be caused to be held'
jel-a-ra-#-~d-e	(2 Sg.) '(you) will be caused to be held'
jel-a-ra-∅-~d-o	(8 Sg.) '(he) will be caused to be held'
mar-a-ra	(ca-2)
mar-a-ra-p-~d-o (se)	(1 Sg.) '(1) shall be caused to be killed'
mar-a-ra-#d-0	(2 Sg.) '(you) will be caused to be killed'
mar-a-ra-Ø-~d-o	(3 Sg.) '(he) will be caused to be killed'

Past formation:

hel-a-ra	(ca-2)
hal-a-ra-%-n-u (sē)	(1 Sg.)'(I) was caused to be moved'
h-1-a-ra-0-n-0	(2 Sg.) '(you) were caused to be moved'
hal-a-ra-p-n-u	(8 Sg.) '(he) was caused to be moved'
jel-a-ra	(ca-2)
jel-a-ra-Ø-p-u (sē)	(1 Sg.) '(1) was caused to be held'
jel-a-ra-∮-ņ-ō	(2 Sg.) (You) were caused to be held
j=1-a-ra-β-n-u	(3 Sg.) '(he) was caused to be held'

mar-a-ra (ca-2)

mar-a-ra-p-n-u(se) (1 Sg.) '(I) was caused to be killed'

mar-a-ra-p-n-e (2 Sg.) '(you) were caused to be killed'

mar-a-ra-Ø-n-u (3 Sg.) '(he) was caused to be killed'

7.7 Participial V. stems:

It has already been stated that the participial V.stem, besides being inflected as a verb, is declined as a substantive or adjective. In other words, it can have personal suffix (for verb inflection) and case suffix (for noun or adjective inflection).

There are only two participial V.stems, the future participle and the past-participle.

The examples of both the participial V. stems are given below:

7.7.1 Future participle:

u dor-nd-o 'he will run'

u dor-nd-o a-y-o 'he came by running'

In the first example, dor-nd-o is a verbal form, which has -o as the personal suffix, indicating third person masculine singular; but in the second example, dor-nd-o has been used as a substantive, which has -o the case suffix, indicating nominative masculine singular.

This is an example of Int. future participle; following is the example of tr. future participle.

t u dis-nd-e 'you will see'
toke dis-nd-e hun ce ' he told on seeing you'

In the fitst example, dis-nd-e is a verbalform having -e the personal suffix, indicating second person Singular but in the second example, dis-nd-e has
been used as a substantive, which has -e case suffix,
indicating oblique singular.

7.7.2 Past-participle:

hathi mU-\$\psi_0 'an elephant died'
mU-\$\psi_0 hathi 'the dead elephant'

Here in the first example, mu-\$\phi\$-0 is a verbal form which has -0 the personal suffix indicating the third person singular; but in the second example, mu-\$\phi\$-0 has been used as an adjective, which has -0 as the case suffix, indicating nominative masculine singular. This example is of the Int. root / mar/ 'die'.

The following example is of the tr. root /dls/ 'see'

tu hathi dI-th-e 'you saw the elephant'
tu hathi dI-th-e sc. 'come for seeing the elephant'

In the first example, dith-e is a verbal form,

which has -e the personal suffix, indicating the second person Singular; but in the second example, dI-th-e has been used as a substantive having -e the oblique Singular suffix.

7.8 Formation of future participle:

The future participle is formed by adding the future morpheme, symbalized as EPJ, to the following bases:

- (i) Int. roots.
- (ii) tr. roots.
- (iii) Derived tr. base.
- (iv) Causal 1 and causal 2.
 - (v) Passive.

The E-FJ has the following three allomorphs, which are conditioned by the nature of base (i.e. tr. or Int.). It has been already stated that all the causals are tr. bases, while the passive bases are Int.

- /-Id/ This alloworph is added to all the tr. bases
 (i.e. tr. roots, derived tr. bases and causals)
- /.nd/ It is added to all those Int.roots which end with a consonant.
- /- d/ This alloworph is added to the Int.bases as ending with any vowel (1.e. Int.roots and the passive stems).

The examples of the formations are given below: The examples are given along with the personal suffix, which indicating 3. m. Sg. and is -o.

(a) The	addition of /-id,	
392	(tr.)	'hold'
301-1d-o	(fut.)	'(he) will hold'
mar	(der.tr.)	'kill'
mar-īd-o	(fut.)	(he) will kill!
hel-a	(cs-1)	'cause to move'
hal-a-id-o	(fut.)	'(he) will cause to move'
J=1-a	(ca-1)	'cause to hold'
jel-a-Id-o	(fut)	'(he) will cause to hold'
mar-a	(ca-lffom der, tr	.)'cause to kill'
mar-a-Id-o	(fut.)	'(he)will cause to kill'
hol-a-ra-	(en-2)	'cause (one) to get (some one) moved'
hal-a-ra-īd-o	(fut.)	'will cause (one) to get (someone) moved'
jel-a-ra	(ca-2)	'cause (one) to get (some one) held'
jal-a-ra-1d-0	(fut.)	'will cause (one) to get (some one) held;
mar-a-ra	(ea-2)	'cause(one) to get (some- one) killed'
mar-a-ra-īd-o	(fut.)	'will cause (one) to get (some one) killed'
(b) The	addition of /-nd	4

hal 'move' (Int.)

hal-nd-o (fut.) 'will move'

(e) The addition of /-d/

(Int.) 'repent' posta pasta-d-o '(he)will repent' (fut.) hal-a- (pass.from. Int.) 'be moved' (fut.) '(he) will be moved' hal-a-d-o (pass.from tr.) 'be held ' jol-a Jal-a-d-o (fu.) '(he) will be held ' mar-a (pass.from der.tr)'be killed ' mar-a-d-0 (fut.) '(he) will be killed' hal-ar ra-Ø (Ca.pass.) 'caused to be got moved' hol-a-ra-p- d-o (fut.) '(he) will be caused to be moved! 101-a-ra-9-(Ca.pass.) 'caused to be got held' Jol-a-ra-#-d-o (fut.) '(he) will be caused to be got held' mar-a-ra-y (Ca.pass.) 'caused to be got killed' mar-a-ra-#-d-o (fut.) '(he) will be caused to be got killed'

7.9 Formation of Past participle:

- 7.9.1 The past participle is formed by adding the past morphome which is symboli-ed as E -pp 3, to the following bases:
 - (1) Int. roots.
 - (ii) tr. root.
 - (111) Der. tr. bases.
 - (iv) Causal, 1 and causal 2.
 - (v) Passive.

The regular alloworph of E-pp 7 is -y e.g.

hal 'move'

hol-y-o 'moved'

jel 'hold'

jel-y-o 'held'

mer 'kill'

mar-y-o 'killed'

7.9.2 There are some bases which form the past participle V. stem by adding other allomorphs of £-pp J. Most of these bases add -y-optionally. The final consonant of all these bases is dropped (except before -Ø) before adding the irregular allomorph of £-pp J. In some bases, the other morphophonemic changes also take place. There are few bases which optionally take two irregular allomorphs. e.g. pi 'drink' has the past-participle forms, pi-d--pi-t-. Here are the examples of all such bases - which take irregular allomorph of £-pp J

/-th-/ is added to the following bases:

Base		Past-Participle!
dis	1see1	āl-th-
ve	'sit'	ve-th-
ges	t rub t	ga-th-"gas-y-
mUs	'destroy'	mU-th-mUs-y-
vəs	'rain'	va-thvas-y-
pi(s)	'grind'	pi-thpis-y-

```
/-th-/ is added to the following bases:
                              Past participle
Base
                             lo-th-
10 (10-)
              come down'
              'be crum-
                             phl-th-phls-y-
phla
               bled'
         /-d-/ is added to the following bases:
              'put-in'
                              VI-d-
vIj
              fest!
kha
                              kha-d-
              'drink'
                              pi-d-
DI.
              'find'
                              lo-d-wlob-y-
lab
         /-k-/ is added to the following bases:
              'ripen'
                        pa-k-- pac-y-
pac
         /-g-/ is added to the following bases:
              *reach*
puj
                              pu-g-
              'go away'
bed
                           ba-g - baj-y-
              'ring'
                             h va-g--vaj-y-
voj
         /-n-/ is added to the following bases:
de (dI-)
              'give'
                               dI-n-
ru (ru-)
              'weep'
                              ru-n-
              'drench'
bIA
                              bI-n--bIj-y-
direj (dir-) 'fear'
                              dlr-n-dlraj-y-
         An - / is added to all the passive bases and
the following other bases:
vIsem
              'be extin-
                              vIsa-n-
```

guished'

/-t-/ is added to the following bases:

Pase		Past participle.
ehu	'touch'	chu-t-
p1 '	'drink'	pi-t-
gay	'sing'	ga-tga-y-
day	'suck'	da-t-da-y-
mac	'be fattened!	ma-tmac-y-
gep	'stick in mud'	go-tgop-y-
geo	'be fixed'	ga-tgae-y-
Sunon (Suna-)	'recognize'	Suna-t Sunn-y-
Sum	(sleep'	Su-t Sum-y-

/-9/ is added to the following bases:

31	'live'	J1-10-
hu	'be'	hu-9 h-9-
khuţ	'be reduced'	khut-%khut-y-
eUk	'miss'	eUk-Øeuk-y-
thak	'be tired'	thake/ thak-y-
phIt	'fadeup'	phit-# phit-y-
phUt	'split-up'	phUt-Ø phUt-y-
198	"be touched"	198-p- ~ 198-y-
1Ik	'hide'	11k-Ø 11k-y-
sUk	'be dry'	suk-p suk-y-
mer (mu-)	'die'	mU-Ø mar-y-

7.9.3 Formation of past participle:

From Int., fr. and Der.tr.:

hal-y-o 'move' 'move'

jel *hold* (tr.) 'held' jal-y-0 *k111 * mar 'killed' mar-y-o (Der. tr.) From first esusal: hol-a (ca-1) 'cause to move' hal-a-y-o 'caused to move' 'cause to hold' Jol-a (ca-1) 191-a-y-o 'caused to hold' 'cause to kill' mar-a (ca-1) 'caused to kill' mar-a-y-o From second causal: hol-a-ra (cn-2) 'cause(one) to get (someone) moved! 'caused(one) to get (somehol-a-ra-y-o one) moved! jol-a-ra (8-60) 'cause(one) to get(someone) held' jol-a-ra-y-o 'caused (one) to get (someone) held' 'cause (one) to get (some-(ca-2) mar-a-ra one) killed' 'caused (one) to get (somemar-a-ra-y-0 one) killed! From passive: hel-a be moved! (passive) hol-a-n-u 'was moved' jol-a 'be held' (passive)

'was held'

jal-a-n-u

mar-a-n-u (passive) 'be killed'
'was killed'

From causel passive:

hel-a-ra-Ø (Ca.passive) 'caused to be moved'
hel-a-ra-Ø-n-u 'was caused to be moved'
jel-a-ra-Ø (Ca.passive) 'caused to be held'
jel-a-ra-Ø-n-u 'was caused to be held'
mar-a-ra-Ø-n-u 'caused to be killed'
mar-a-ra-Ø-n-u 'was caused to be killed'

7.10 The formations of Verb-root which are not used in the verbal forms:

There are some formations in which the stems are derived from the V.root, but they are not used in the Verb inflection. Some of them are used in the compound verbs (e.g. past-conjunctive) and others are used as the indicinable forms expressing some verbal categories (e.g. future-2).

These formations are as follows:

- (i) Past-conjunctive.
- (11) Gerundive.
- (iii) Future-2.
 - (iv) Infinitive.

These formations are described in the following sections.

7.10.1 Past Conjunctive.

It is an indeclinable formation which is formed by adding the past conjunctive morpheme, symbalized as E-pc_7. It has only single allomorph /i/ which is added to all the following bases:

- (1) Int. roots.
- (11) tr. roots.
- (iii) Der. tr. bases.
 - (iv) Causal 1 and 2.
 - (v) Passive (of tr. and der.tr.)

The past conjunctive, formed by the addition of E-pc J morphome, may be optionally followed by ker-i the past-conjunctive of ker ' do' or/ and the indeclinable particle ne 'then', without changing its significence, e.g.,

kha-i 'having eaten'

kha-i kar-i 'having caten'

kha-i ker-i ne 'having eaten'

kha-i ne 'having eaten'

/hal/ 'move' is an exceptional root, which optionally takes /-i/ or /-yo/ as the £-pcJ. When /-yo/ is added, it is not followed by ker-i or ne.

From Int. Tr. and Der.tr.

hel- (Int.) 'move'

hal-i (kari)(ne)(past. conj.) 'having moved'

jel	(tr)	'hold'
jel-i (keri)(ne)	(pest.conj.)	'having held'
mar	(der.tr)	
mar-i (kar-i)(ne)	(past-conj)	'having killed'
From first Causal:		
hol-a		'cause to move'
hal-a-i (kar-i) ne		'having caused to move'
Jol-a		'cause to hold'
jol-a-i(kor-i) (ne)	'having caused to hold'
mar-a		'cause to kill'
mar-a-i (ker-i)(ne)		'having caused to kill'
From second causal		
hol-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (some one) moved'
hel-a-ra-i (ker-i)	(ne)	'having caused (one) to get (some one) moved'
jel-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause (one) to get (some one) held'
j=1-a-ra-1(k=r-1)(ne)		'having caused (one)to get (someone) helu'
mar-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one)to get (someone) killed'
mar-a-ra-1 (kari) (ne)		'having caused (one)to get (someone)killed'

From passive:

There is no formation from the intransitive roots.

(passive) 'be held' jelet. jol-j-i (kor-i)(ne) 'having been held' 'be killed' (passive) mara-j mer-j-i (kori)(ne) 'having been killed' From first causal-passive: hal-a-i (Ca-1. Passive) 'caused to be moved' hol-a-j-i(ker-i)(ne) 'having caused to be moved ! jol-a-j (Ca-l. Passive) caused to be held' jel-a-j-i (keri)(ne) 'having caused to be held! mar-a-j (ca-1. passive) 'caused to be killed' mar-a-j-i(kar-i)(ne) having caused to be killed' From second causal-passive: hal-a-ra-j (ca-2. Passive) caused (one) to get (someone) moved' hal-a-ra-j-i (kar-i)(ne) 'having caused (one) to get (someone) moved' jel-a-ra-j (Ca-2. passive) 'caused (one) to get (someone)held' jal-a-ra-j-1 (kor-1)(ne) 'having caused (one) to get (someone)held' (Ca-2. passive) 'caused (one) to get mar-a-ra-j (some one) killed' mar-a-ra-j-i (kar-i)(ne)

Note: The post position kari-, is rerely used in the passive formations, on the otherhand the post position he is used very frequently.

'having caused (one) to get (someone) killed'

7.10.2 Gerundive:

The gerundive is an indeclinable formation. It is formed by adding the gerundive morpheme, symbolized as EGF to the following bases:

- (i) Int. roots.
- (ii) Tr. roots.
- (111) Der. Tr. stems.
- (iv) Causals.

The gerundive morpheme has following two alloworphs.

/-je/ Which is added to the Int. roots.

/-ije/ Which is added to the tr. roots are stems.

The addition of the allomorph /-je/

From intransitive roots:

TON THE GOOD STAR TONGS

'move'

hal-je

hal

'should be moved'

The addition of alloworph /-ije/

From Tr. and Der. tr:

let

'hold'

Jol-1je

'should be held'

mar

'move'

mar-ije

'should be killed'

From first causal:

hol-a

(Ca-1)

'cause to move'

hol-a-ije

'should be caused to move'

jol-a	(Ca+1)	'cause to hold'
jel-a-ije		'ehould be caused to hold'
mar-a	(Ca-1)	'cause to kill'
mar-a-ije		'should be caused to kill'
From second cau	salı	
hel-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (someone) moved'
hol-a-ra-ija		'(one)should be caused to get (someone)moved)
jol-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (someone) held'
jel-a-ra-ije		'(one)should be caused to get (someone)held'
mar-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (someone)killed'
mar-a-ra-ije		'(one)should be caused to get (someone) killed'

7.10.3 Future-2

There is one additional formation of future tense.

It is different from the future in the following respects:

- (i) In the future, the tense marker is different from the personal suffix; but in the future 2, the same suffix stands for the tense and the person.
- (11) The future, has complete paradigm according to the person, number and gender, but in the future 2, there is only a single form which is used only with first person plural inclusive and exclusive.

(iii) The future 1 enters into the construction with auxiliary (e.g. hel-nd-o pyo etc.), but the future? does not enter into the construction with the auxiliaries.

The formation of future 2.

The future 2 is formed by adding the future-2 morpheme, symbalized as E-F-27 to the following bases:

- (i) Int. roots.
- (ii) tr. roots.
- (111) Der. tr. base.
 - (iv) Causal 1 and 2.

The morpheme FF-27 has two allomorphs:

/bo/ Which is added to the Int. roots, and
/ibo/ Which is added to all the tr. bases.

It has been already stated that the foture-2 is used only with the first person exclusive plural pronoun asi 'we' and the inclusive pronoun pan 'I/we and you'

The addition of alloworph /-bo/

From Int. roots:

hal

move

(asī/pap)hal-bo

'we shall move'

The addition of allomorph /-ibo/

From tr. roots and der.tr.stems:

jol

'hold'

(981/pan) jel-150 'we shall hold' mar 'kill' (osi/pan) mar-ibo 'we shall kill' From first causal: (Ca-1) 'cause to move' ho lea (>s1/pan) h>1-a-1bo 'we shall cause to move! Jol-a (Ca-1) 'cause to hold' (>si/pan) jel-a-ibo 'we shall cause to hold' 'cause to kill' (Ga-1) mar-a (asi/pan) mar-a-ibo 'we shall cause to kill' From second causal: hol-a-ra (Ca-2) 'cause (one) to get (someone)moved' (asi/pan) hal-a-ra-1bo 'we shall cause (one) to get (som one) moved! 'cause (one) to get jol-a-ra (Ca-2) (someone) held! (asī/pan) jal-a-ra-ibo 'we shall cause (one) to get (some one)held' 'cause (one) to get (someone) killed' (ca-2) mar-a-ra mar-a-ra-ibo 'we shall cause (one) to get (someone)killed'

Note: Future-2 is not formed from the passive formations.

7.10.4 Infinitive:

The infinitive formation is declined like a substantive. It is formed by adding the infinitive mor -

pheme, Symbolized as E-Inf. 7, to the following basis:

- (1) Int: roots.
- (11) Tr. roots.
- (111) Der. tr. stems.
 - (iv) Causals.
 - (v) Passive.

The infinitive morpheme has only a single morph -p- which is added to the all kinds of basis. When it is formed from the intransitive bases, it has only single form indicating masculine singular; but when it is formed from the transitive bases it has full para - digms i.e. it is conjugated according to two numbers and two genders.

From int, tr. and der, tr:

hel 'move'

hal-n-u 'to move'

191 'hold'

jel-n-u 'to hold'

mar 'kill'

mar-n-d 'to kill'

From first causal:

hel-a (Ca-1) 'cause to move'

hol-a-n-u 'to cause to move'

jel-a (Ca-1) 'cause to hold'

jol-a-n-u 'to cause to hold'

mer-a	(Ca-1)	'cause to kill'
mar-a-n-u		'to cause to kill'
From second causal:		
hol-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (someone) moved'
hal-a-ra-p-u		'to cause (one) to get (someone) moved'
jel-a-ra	(Ca-2)	'cause(one) to get (some one)held'
jol-a-ra-p-u		'to cause (one) to get (someone) held'
mar-a-ra	(Ca-8)	'cause(one) to get (someone)killed'
war-a-ra-p-u		'to cause(one) to get (someone) killed'
From passive:		
jele-j	(passive)	'be held'
jəl-j-n-u		'to be held'
mara-j	(passive)	'be killed'
mar-j-n-u		'to be killed'

在安安安安安安安安安安安

CHAPTER

8

CONJUGATION OF VERB

8.1 The grammatical categories expressed by the yerb.

In Kachi, the verb, morphologically, expresses the following grammatical categories:

1) Cender.

11) Number.

III) Person.

iv) Mood.

v) Aspect, and

viii) Tense.

8.1.1 Gender:

There are two genders; the masculine and the feminine, which are distinguished by the verb, e.g.

hol-nd-o

'he will move'

hal-nd-1

'she will move'

The gender is an optional category, i.e. it may or may not be expressed by the verb. In fact the gender is not distinguished in all the simple moods viz. the imperative, the future-imparative and the subjunctive, e.g.

hal-d (Subjunctive, 3Sg.) 'he/she may move'

8.1.2 Number:

There are two numbers: Singular and Plural.
The verb, distinguishes the number in all the moods and

and the tenses, e.g.

hol-nd-o

'he will move'

hol-nd-a

'they will move'

8.1.3 Person:

There are three persons, the first person, the second person and the third person. They are distinguished by the verb, in all the moods and the tenses, e.g.

hal-nd-o(se)

'I shall go'

hal-nd-s

'you will go'

hal-nd-o

'he will go'

Except the second person Singular, in the imperative mood, all the persons, in all the moods and the tenses, are expressed by the inflectional suffixes which have been termed as the personal suffixes (ps). The second person singular, in the imperative mood, is expressed by the absence of a personal suffix, e.g.

hal

(Imp. 2 Sg.) 'you move'

hel-o

(Imp. 2 Pl.) 'you move'

8.1.4 Mood:

There are three moods, which are distinguished by the verb, ViZ. the imperative, the future-imperative and the subjunctive, e.g.

hal-aj

(Imp. 2 Sg.) 'you move' (Fut.Imp. 2.Sg.)'you move' (hereafter) hal-e (Subj. 2Sg.) 'you may move'

8.1.5 Aspect:

There are two aspects: the habitual and the perfect, which are distinguished by the verb, e.g.

hal-nd-o ay(present habitual) 'he uses to move' hal-y-o ay(present perfect) 'he has moved'

The mood and the aspect are mutually exclusive, i.e. the verb either indicates the mood or the aspect at a time.

8.1.6 Tense:

The tense category is expressed by two ways:

(1) by the participles V.stems and (11) by the auxiliaries. In the absence of temporal auxiliaries, the past participle and the future participle function as the past and future respectively. But when the temporal auxiliaries occur in the formations the past participle and the future participle respectively, function as the perfect and habitual. The time element is then expressed by the auxiliaries, e.g.

hal-nd-o (future, 8 Sg.) 'he will move' hal-nd-o ay (present habitual 8 Sg.) 'he uses to move' hal-y-o ay (present perfect) ' he has moved'

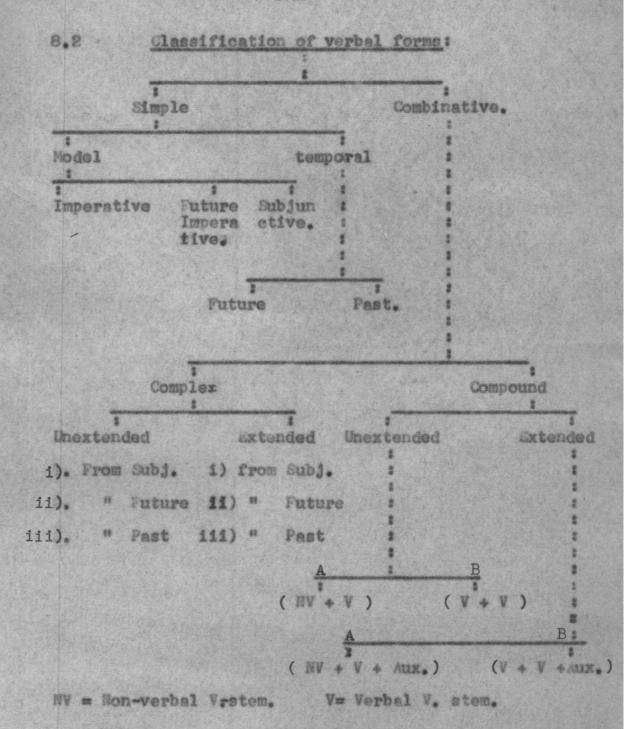
In the first example, there is no temporal auxiliary; hence, the future participle hel-nd- functions as the future. But in the second example, the future participle hel-nd- functions as the habitual and -ay auxiliary indicates the time, i.e. present tense. Similarly in the third example, the past participle hel-y- functions as the past; but in the fourth example hel-y is the perfect and -ay auxiliary indicates the present tense.

The present tense, in the simple formation, is expressed by the auxiliary hu- 'be' (form />-/ and in the complex formations either by the auxiliary hu or by the subjunctive form the primary k verb, e.g.

hal-nd-o a-iya (habitual 'l use to move' present)

hal-a p-y-o (present 'l am moving' continuous -1)

First example is the present form of to be; in the second example, >- auxiliary expresses the present tenst; in the third example the subjunctive form hal-a functions as the present form.



The classification of Verbal forms (the conjustive moods and tenses:

All the verbal forms are put into two classes: Simple and Combinative. The simple class is divided into two sub classes. 1. model and 2, temporal. The combinacomplex and compound. Each sub-class of combinative has two categories, namely (a) unextended and (b) extended. Thus we will have un-extended complex and extended complex. Similarly, un-extended compound and extended compound. In each category, there are many different types. The details of all the classes are given in the following sections.

8.2.1 The simple verbal form consists of a single V. stem plus a personal suffix, e.g.

hal-d (fut. 3rd m. Sg) ' he will move ' hal-3 (sub. 3rd Sg.) ' he may move '

Here, hel-nd-o is a simple verbal form, as it contains a V-stem hel-nd-(future participle) and the personal suffix -o (expressing 3rd m. Sg.).

Similarly hal-3 is a simple verbal form as it consists of a V-stem hal- plus the personal suffix-3.

(expressing subj. 3rd Sg.)

V-stem. The simple verbal form means a formation having a single V-stem. That V-stem may be simple (as hal-) or derived (as hal-nd-); but the simple V-stem means the V.stem which is not derived as hal- in the verbal form hal-3 'he may move'.

The simple verbal forms are divided into two sub-classes: modal and temporal. The modal forms express the mood and the temporal forms express time. There are three simple modal forms, viz. the imperative, the future imperative and the subjunctive. There are two simple temporal forms viz. the future and the past. The Dubjunctive is some how different from the other modal forms. The imperative and the future-imperative always remain as the modal forms and never enter into the construction with the suxiliaries, but the subjunctive can enter into the construction with auxiliaries and in those constructions it functions as the present form, e.g.

hal-3 (Subj. 3 Sg.) ' he may move ' hal-3 p-y-o (Pre.cont.1) 'he is moving'

In the second example the subjunctive form hol-3 functions as the present and p-y-o auxiliary expresses continuity.

The temporal forms, the future and the past can enter into the construction with auxiliaries. It has already been mentioned that when the temporal forms, future and past, occur along with the temporal auxiliaries they express aspects, VIZ. habitual and perfect respectively.

The examples of all the simple forms are as follows:

Modal:

1. Imporative:

hel-e (2 Pl.) 'you move'

jel-yo (2 Pl.) 'you hold'

2. Puture imperative:

hal-ja (2 Pl.) 'you move (hereafter)'
jal-ija (2 Pl.) 'you hold (hereafter)'

3. Subjunctive:

jal-e (8 Sg.) 'he may move'

Temporal:

4. Future:

hal-nd-o (m. 35g.) 'he will move'
jal-id-o (m. 35g.) 'he will hold'

5. Past:

hal-y-o (m. 8 Sg.) 'he moved' jal-%-e (m. 8 Sg.) 'he held'

8.2.2 Complex verbal form:

The combinative verbel forms are divided into two sub-classes, namely complex and compound. The complex verbal form consists of a simple verbal form and one or two auxiliaries. The complex form having one auxiliary has been termed as 'Un-extended complex form,

and the complex form containing two auxiliaries, is termed as Extended complex form; e.g.

hel-d p-y-o (pre. cont.) 'he is moving'
hel-d p-y-o to (Dur. 1) 'he is moving
(for long time)'

Here in the first example, there is only one aux. p-y-o, hence held p-y-o is the un-extended complex form; but in the second example there are two auxiliaties, p-y-o and t-o, therefore held p-y-o t-o is -- extended complex form.

Here the term 'complex' is used to indicate that the given construction contains only a single primary verb; the other verbs, occurring in the construction are the auxiliaries or modifiers. The complex is distinguished from the compound, as a compound form contains more than one primary verbs.

It is already been mentioned that from the simple verbal forms, the Subjunctive, the future and the past enter into the construction with the auxiliaries. Thus we get the following three types in each category:

The un-extended complex from:-

(i) The Subjunctive form, (ii) Future form and (iii) The past form.

Again in each type there are many formations. In all, there are twenty two complex formations, out of

which sixteen are un-extended complex forms and six are extended complex forms.

All the complex formation along with the examples are given below:

(i) From Subjunctive haled 'he may move' etc., (a) Un-extended

Present : hal-d to 'he moves'

Present Cont. 1 : hal-3 p-y-o ' he is moving'

Present Cont. 2: hal-d Ve-th-o ' he is moving (for long time)

(b) |xtended

Present durative 1: hal-d p-y-o t-o 'he is moving (continuously)

Present durative 2: hal-d Ve-th t-o 'he is (continuously)
moving (for a longtime)'

(11) From Future form hal-nd-o 'he will move ' etc.,

(a) Un-extended

Future Cont. 1: hal-nd-o p-y-o 'he will be moving'
Future Cont. 2: hal-nd-o Ve-th-o 'he will be moving (for long time)

Future Dublious: hal-nd-o hu-d-o 'he might be moving'
Future Subjunctive: hal-nd-o V-3 'he may be moving'
Habitual present: hal-nd-o a-iya 'I s use to move'
Habitual past: hal-nd-o V-o 'I used to move'

(b) Extended

Habitual pre. Cont: hal-nd-o p-y-o a-iya 'I (continuously) use to move'

Habitual past Cont: hal-nd-o p-y-o v-o 'I (continuously) used to move'.

(111) From Past form hal-y-o 'he moved' etc.,

(a) Un-extended

Past Cont. 1 : hol-y-o to 'he was just moving'

Past Cont. 2 : hal-y-o p-y e 'he was moving'

Past Cont. 3: hal-y-o Ve-the 'he was moving'(for long time)

Past Dubious: hel-y-o hu-"d-o 'he might have moved'

Past Subjunc- hel-y-o V-5 'he may have moved' tive.

Perfect Pre- Hol-y-o ay 'he has moved' sent.

Perfect past hal-y-o v-o 'he had moved'

(b) Extended

Past Dur. 1: hal-y-o p-y e t e 'I was (continuously) moving'

Past Dur. 2 : hal-y-o Ve-the t e 'I was (continuously)
moving(for long time)'

8.2.3 Compound Verbal form:

V-stems plus or minus an auxiliary. Like the complex forms, the compound forms are also divided into two sub-classes:

(a) Unextended, (b) extended. The unextended compound form consists of only two primary V-stems while extended

8.3 Personal Suffixes:

It has been already mentioned that a verbal form (i.e. the inflected form of the verb) contains a
V-stem and the personal suffix. All the personal suffixes
are put into six different sets. Each set consists of
such suffixes as indicate the same grammatical catego ave
ries and used in the particular formation (s). The single suffix stands for more than one grammatical categories.

without indication of masculine and feminine, the suffix should be considered common to both genders. Similarly without indication of Int. and tr, the suffix should be treated common to both kinds of V-stems.

PMN= Suffix indicates person, mood and number.

PNG Suffix indicates person, number and gender.

NG = Suffix indicates number and gender.

The sets of the suffixes are given below:

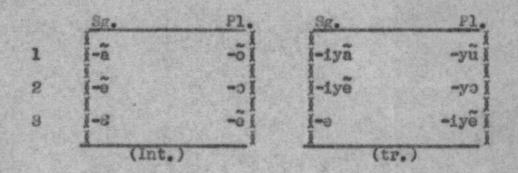
PRM-1

The suffixes of this set express the person (only 2) the imperative mood and the number (only Pl.)

(only 2) the future imporative mood and the number - (Sg. and Pl.)

PNM-3

The suffixes of this set express the person (1,2 and 3) the subjunctive mood and the number (Sg. and Fl.)



PNG-4

The suffixes of this set express the person (1,2 and 3) the number (Sg. and Pl.) and the gender - (m. and f.)

	Sg.		P1.	_
1	-o (se)	(m)	-a (sī) (m) ĝ
	i (ya) (si	ē) (f)	a~yū(s	(1) (F)
2	-	(m)		, 1
	-10	(2)	} -a	(m) [
3	-0	(m)	(-yu	(f) i
	-1	(2)	1	A A

PN(0)-5

(1,2 and 3) the number (Sg. and Pl.) These may also indicate the gender in first person.

	Sg.	P1.
1	1-0	a(si)
	i o(sī) (m)	-a (m)
	1 1(ya)(sē) (f)	-yū (f)
2	-e	{ - i
3	j-ē	()
	(tr.)	

Other suffixes:

NG-6

The suffixes of this set express the number (Sg. and Pl) and gender (m. and f.)

These suffixes do not express the person. These suffixes are added only to the auxiliary t-.

Note:

-So and -Si are additional optional personal suffixes which are added to the personal suffixes indicating first person Singular and first person Plural respectively without changing the significance of the

verbal form.

-iya the personal suffix, expressing first person Singular feminine, can be optionally used as -i only, e.g.

au	hol-md-o. (1 m. Sg.)	' I shall move '
	hal-nd-o-se	' I shall move '
osĩ	hol-nd-a- (1.m.Pl.)	' we shall move '
	hel-nd-a-sī	' we shall move '
ēŭ	hel-nd-iya- (1.f.sg.)	' I shall move '
	hol-nd-iya-se-	' I shall move '
	hal-nd-i ~	' I shall move '
	hal-nd-1-se	' I shall move !

在在安全市市市市市市市市

CHAPTER

9

FORMATION OF SIMPLE VEREAL FORMS

(The simple moods and tenses)

9.1 while describing the formation of the simple moods and tenses, the full paradigms are given of the intransitive root / hol/ 'move'. The transitive / jol / 'hold', the derived transitive / mar/ 'kill'. In the case of causal and passive, only one example has been given for each, because the conjugation of causal is exactly like themtransitive and the passive is conjugated like the transitive.

In the simple moods, the personal suffix (P.suf.) expresses person, number and mood (PNM); the gender is not distinguished in the simple moods, In the simple - tenses, the personal suffix expresses person, number and gender (PNG);, the tense is expressed by the participial suffix.

The causal and the passive formations are expressed by the presence of causal and passive suffix morphemes in the V-stem.

The formation of each mood and tense is described in this way: there is a formula followed by morpho - phonemic and other rules (if any) and lastly there are paradigms of the different roots.

9.2 Simple formations:

Following are the Simple formations:

- 1. Imperative mood.
- 2. Future imperative mood.
- 3. Subjunctive mood.
- 4. Future tense.
- 5. Past tense.

9.3 Imperative mood.

Formula: V-stem + PNM-1 = Imperative form.

PNM-1 gives the imperative form. In the imperative mood verb is conjugated only for the second person. The second person Singular is expressed by the absence of any p.suf. The formation of imperative mood from the different v - stems is as follos:

From Simple V. Stems:

/hal/ 'you move etc.'

/jal/ 'you hold etc.'

/mar/ 'you kil etc.'

Eg. Pl.

hal hal-a

jal-yo

mar mar-yo

From first causal:

/hol-a/ 'you cause to move etc'

/jol-a/ 'you cause to hold etc'

/mar-a/ 'you cause to kill etc'

Sa.

hol-a(y) hol-a-yo

mar-a(y) mar-a-yo

From second Causal:

jal-a(y)

/hal-a-ra/ 'you cause (one) to get (someone) moved' etc.,

jel-a-yo

/jel-a-ra/ 'you cause (one) to get (someone) held' etc.,

/mar-a-ra/ 'you cause (one) to get (someone) killed' etc.,

Sg. Pl.

hel-a-ra(y) hel-a-ra-yo

jol-a-ra(y) jol-a-ra-yo

mar-a-ra(y) mar-a-ra-yo

From first causal passive:

/hal-a-j/ 'you be caused to be moved etc'

/jol-a-j/ 'you be caused to be held etc'

/mar-a-j/ 'you be caused to be killed etc

 Sg.
 Pl.

 hele-je
 hele-je

 jel-a-je
 hele-je

 mar-a-je
 mar-a-je

From second causal passive:

/hal-a-ra-j/'you be caused to be moved etd'
/jal-a-ra-j/'you be caused to be got held etc'
/mar-a-ra-j/'you be caused to be got killed
etc'

Mar-a-ra-j mar-a-ra-j-o

(Note: The passive is not formed from the simple V. stems)

9.4 Future imperative mood:

Formula: V. Stem + PNM-2 = Future imperative form.

p. suf. from the set PNM-2 to a V-Stem. like imperative, the future imperative also is conjugated only in the second person. The personal suffixes -> j and -j are phonologically conditioned. -> j is added to the consonant ending intransitive bases and -j is added to the vowel ending intransitive bases.

The formation of future imperative from the

different bases is as follows:

From simple V.stems:

/hal-aj/ 'you move (hereafter) etc.,

/jal-ij/ 'you hold (hereafter) etc.,

/mar-ij/ 'you kill (hereafter) etc.,

Sa. Pl.

hal-aj hal-ja

jal-ij jal-ija

mar-ij mar-ija

Prom first causal:

From second causal:

/hol-a-ra-ij/ 'you cause (one) to get (some one) moved, etc.'

/jol-a-ra-ij/ 'you cause (one) to get (some one) held, etc.'

/mar-a-ra-ij/ 'you cause (one) to get (some one) killed, etc.'

Eg.

hol-a-ra-ij

hol-a-ra-ija

jol-a-ra-ija

mar-a-ra-ija

(Note: The passive is not formed in the future impera-

9.5 Subjunctive mood:

Formula: V-stem + PNM-3 = Subjunctive form.

The Subjunctive mood is formed by adding any p.suf. from the set PNN-3 to a V-stem.

The formation of subjunctive mood from the different bases is as follows:

From simple V-stems:

/hol-8	/	*I	mey	move.	etc.

	Se.	<u>P1</u> .
1.	həl-ã	hal-õ
2.	həl-ë	hal-a
8.	hol-d	h=1-6
	/jol-1ya/	'I may hold, etc.'
1.	jol-iyā	jel-yū
2.	jol-iye	jol-yo
9	101-0	101-100

/mar-iya/ ' I may kill, etc. ' Pl. Sg. mar-iya mar-yu 1. mar-iye 2. mar-yo mar-1ye mar-e 3. From first causal: hel-a-iva (1 Sg.) ' I may cause to move' Jal-a-i-ya (1 Sg.) I may cause to hold ' (1 Sg.) 'Imay cause to kill ' mar-a-iya From second causal: ' I may cause (one) to get (some one) moved.' hel-a-ra-iya (1 Sg.) jel-a-ra-iya (1 8g.) ' I may cause (one) to get (some one) held.' ' I may cause (one) to get (some one) killed' mar-a-ra-iya (1 Sg.) Prom passive: 101-1-8 (1 Sg.) ' I may be held' mar-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be killed' (Note: The passive of intransitive base has only one conjugation for all the persons and numbers, e.g. (mu thi) hal-j-d (1 ag.) '(it) may be moved by me.

(a thi) hal-j-8 (2 Pl.) '(it) may be moved by you.

From first causal massive:

hel-a-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be moved'

jel-a-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be held'

mar-a-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be killed'

From second causal passive:

hel-a-ra-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be got moved'
jel-a-ra-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be got held'
mar-a-ra-j-a (1 Sg.) 'I may be caused to be got killed'

9.6. Future tense:

Formula: FP + PNG -4 = Future form.

p.suf. from the set PNG-4 to the future participle Vstem.

- (i) When the future participle is followed by a p. Suf. beginning with e- or y-, the future suffixes /-nd-/ and /-d-/ can optionally be changed with /-n-/; a n d the future suffix / I d-// with / -in/-
- (ii) In the plural formations, the distinction of person is lost.
- (iii) -se and -si are additional optional personal suffixes.
- (iv) The masculine first person plural form can optionally used for the feminine first person plural.

(v) The p. Suf. -iya can optionally be used -i.

The future formations from different bases are

From Simple V-stems:

	(Manualtus) (halur	d-o/ 'he will move etc.,'
Eretta i	Sg. Sg.	Pl.
1.	hal-nd-o (se)	10 [[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[
2.	hal-nd-e	(hol-nd-a
3.	hel-nd-o	t e to selle
	Joi 15 /joi-id-	o/ ' he will hold, etc.'
		il announce south
1.	Jol-1d-o(se)	(sī)
2.	jol-īd-e	Col-Id-a
3.	Jol-1d-0	1
nal m	HER SERVICE CONTROL (1985) 2011년 2021년 전 1212년	o/ ' he will kill, etc.'
1.	mar-îd-o (se)	(Is).
2.	mar-īd-e	mar-Id-a
3.	mer-ru-o	ion and all lead
110 1 70		/ 'she will move, etc. '
		no pi. 11 brigg toma very
1.	hal-nd-1 (ya)-(sõ)	(+(sī)- hal-nd-
2.	hol-nd-1e - n-	(hol-nd-yū a(sī) (hol-nd-yū (-n-
9.	hal-nd-1	

/mar-id-1/ 'she will kill, etc.,'

From first causal:

From second causal :

hel-a-re-Id-o	(m. 3 Sg.)	'he will cause (one) to get (some one) moved!
j=1-a-ra-1d-o	(m. 3 Sg.)	'he will cause (one) to get (some one) held'
mar-a-ra-Id-o	(m. 3 Sg.)	'he will cause (one) to get (some one) killed'
hal-a-ra-īd-i	(f. 3 Sg.)	'she will cause (one) to get (some one) moved'
jelfra-id-i	(f. 3 Sg.)	'she will cause (one) to get (some one) held'
mar-a-ra-īd-i	(f. 8 Sg.)	'she will cause (one) to get (some one) killed'

From passive:

mar-a- d-i

jol-a-"d-o (m. 3 Sg.) 'he will be held'
mer-a-"d-o (m. 3 Sg.) 'he will be killed'
jol-a-"d-i (f. 3 Sg.) 'she will be held'

(f. 8 Sg.) 'she will be killed'

From causal-passive:

hal-a-ra-"d-o (3 Sg.) 'he will be caused to be got moved'

jal-a-ra-"d-o (3 Sg.) 'he will be caused to be got held'

mar-a-ra-"d-o (3 Sg.) 'he will be caused to be got killed'

hal-a-ra-"d-i (f.3 Sg)'she will be caused to be got moved'

jal-a-ra-"d-i (f.3 Sg)'she will be caused to be got held'

mar-a-ra-"d-i (f.3 Sg)'she will be caused to be got killed'

9.6.1 Passive formation in future:

(1) The passive suffix /-a-/ is homo-phoneus to the first causal suffix /-a-/. The nature of the suffix (i.e. passive or causal) is decided by the followingfuture suffix. If the future suffix is transitive, the base will be causal; if it is intransitive, the base will be passive e.g.

jal-a (may be first causal or passive)

jal-a-id-o (Ca-1) 'he will cause to hold'

jal-a-d-o (passive) 'he will be held '

- (11) The passive formed from intransitive V-stoms has Single conjugation for all the persons and numbers.
- (111) The bases ending with -a takes /-#-/ passive suffix. If these bases are intransitive, then the active and the passive forms would be homo-phonous in the -future, e.g.

posta (Int. V.stem) 'repent'

posta-d-o (active Fut.) 'he will repent'

posta-D-d-o (Fassive Fut.) '(it) will be repented'

In this cituation, the nature of verbal form is decided by the systectical construction. If it is active form, it will have full paradigm but if it is passive form, it will have only single conjugation (i.e. 3 Sg.) for all the persons and numbers, e.g.

posta-d-o (active) 'he will repent'
posta-d-a (active) 'they will repent'

(In thi) pasta-p-d-o (Passive) '(it) will be repented by him'.

(Ini thi) pasta-p-d-o (passive) '(it) will be repented by them'

(iv) Passive is not formed from first causal.

9.7 Past tense:

The formation of past tense from intransitive V-stems is different from that of transitive. Hence, they

are described seperately. The morphophonic and other rules which are common to both intransitive and transitive formations, are given below:

- (1) The past suffix /-y-/ is dropped before the p. suf. beginning with e-, i- and y-. In this situation, the consonant ending bases take additional -> before the dropping of /-y-/.
- (11) The first person, masculine plural form can be optionally used for the first person feminine plural.
- (111) -se and -si are additional eptional suffixes. Similarly, -i can be optionally used in place of -iya.
- 9.7.1 Past formation from the intransitive bases:
 Formula: PP + PNG 4 = Past form:

The addition of any p.suf. from set PRG- 4 to the intransitive bases given rise to the past intransitive formation.

(i) In the intransitive formations, the distinction of person is obliterated.

Following are the intransitive formations:

(Masculine)

/hal-y-o/ ' he moved, etc.'

(Feminine)

hala- β -i 'she moved, etc., hala- β -i(ya)-(se) (+(si)-hal-y-a(si) 2. hala- β -iye (hala- β -yu 3. hala- β -i

From passive:

jal-a-n-u (m.3 Sg.) 'he was held'
mar-a-n-u (m.3 Sg.) 'he was killed'
jal-a-n-i (f.3 Sg.) 'she was held'
mar-a-n-i (f.3 Sg.) 'she was killed'

From causal passive:

hel-a-ra-new (m.8 Sg.) 'he was caused to be got moved'
jel-a-ra-n-w (m.8 Sg.) 'he was caused to be got held'
mar-a-ra-n-w (m.8 Sg.) 'he was caused to be got killed'
hel-a-ra-n-w (f.8 Sg.) 'she was caused to be got moved'
jel-a-ra-n-w (f.8 Sg.) 'she was caused to be got held'
mar-a-ra-n-w (f.8 Sg.) 'she was caused to be got killed'

9.7.2 Past formation from the transitive bases

The addition of any p.suf. from set PNG-5 to the transitive bases gives rise to the transitive formations.

- (i) In the transitive formation, the conjugation of first person singular is different from the conjugation tion of other persons. In all the persons, except first person Singular, the verb always agrees with the subject. In the case of first person singular, the verb may agree with subject or object.
- (ii) The gender distinction is observed only in the first person singular.
- (iii) In the first and second person plural, the subject remains in the nominative case, but in the other persons, subject may optionally remain in the nominative or oblique case.
- (iv) In the first person singular, when subject is in the oblique case, the verb agrees with object only. In this situation, the optional suffix -se is not used.
- (v) The person distinction is not observed in the second and third person plural.

9.7.2.1 Formations in which verb agrees with subject:

The formations are given along with the subject.

The case of the subject is given in the parenthesis below the subject.

From Simple V.stems:

au jal -y-o

' I held, etc.'

Sg.

P1.

1. au jol-y-o (Nom.) esi jel-y-a(si)

Jal-y-o(se) (m)

jele-\$(ya)(se) (f)

2.tu/to jal-#-e (Nom/ Obl) ol jol-y-a

3. u/Un jel-Ø-e (Nom/ Obl)

u/Uni jel-y-a (Nom/Obl)

au mar-y-o

mar>-9-1 (ya)-(se) (f)

' I killed, etc.,'

1. au mar-y-o (Nom.) mar-y-o (se) (m)

əsī mar-y-a-(sī)

.2. tu/to mar-/-e (Nom./ Obl.) oī mar-y-ā

8. u/Un mar-p-e (Nom./ Obl.) u/Uni Mar-y-a (Nom./ Obl.)

Froms first causal:

au hal-a-y-o (1Sg.) 'Icaused to move'
au jal-a-y-o (1Sg.) 'I caused to hold'
au mar-a-y-o (1Sg.) 'I caused to kill'

From second causal:

hel-a-ra-y-o (1 Sg.) 'I caused (one) to get (some one) moved'

au jel-a-ra-y-o (1 Sg.) 'I caused (one) to get (some one) held'

au mar-a-ra-y-o (1 Sg.) 'I caused (one) to get (some one) killed'

9.7.2.2 Formations in which verb agrees with object : (Only first person Singular)

From Simple V. stem:

Subject Object Verb mu kUto jel-y-o ' I held a dog ' (obl.) (m. Sg.) kUta jal-y-a * I held the dogs * (m. Pl.) kUt1 jolo-9-1 ' I held a bitch ' (f. Sg.) kUty-u jele-9-yu ' I held the bitches' (f. Pl.)

From first causal:

mu kUto jel-a-y-o 'I caused to hold a dog'
mu kUti jel-a-y-i 'I caused to hold a bitch'

From second causal:

mu kUto jel-a-ra-y-o' I caused (one) to get a dog held'
mu kUti jel-a-ra-p-i' I caused (one) to get a bitch held '

9.7.8 Passive formation in past;

as in the future, so in the past, the passive suffix /-a-/ is homo-phonous to the first causal suffix /-a-/. Similarly passive suffix is /-\$\psi\$-/ after the k bases ending with the vowel -a. The nature of base (causal or passive) is decided by the selection of personal suffixes. The passive bases take suffixes from the set PNG-4 while the causal bases take suffixes from the set PNG-5.

The passive of the intrensitive bases has only single conjugated form but the passive of the transitive bases has full paradigm.

always /-n-/. It is a phonological rule of Kachi that -o does not occur after any nesal in the poly syllables, hence, in the personal suffix, we get -u in place of -o, e.g.

jel-a (causal or passive)

jol-a-n-u (passive) 'he was held'

jel-a-Ø-e (first causal) 'he caused to hold'

CHAPTER

10

AUXILIARIES

10.1 Auxiliary verbs and their function:

The complex verbal forms are formed with the help of auxiliary verbs. Auxiliary verbs are such verbs which modify the action expressed by the primary verb. The auxiliaries may indicate:

A PROPERTY OF						
(a)	Aspect	(various	degrees	OI	COULT	multy)

(b) Time (present and past)

(c) Mode (condition, doubt etc.,)

The same auxiliary in the different formations may express different modifications, e.g.,

au kha-id-o v-a 'I may be cating'

au kha-d -o v-o ' I had eaten'

Here, in the first example the auxiliary vexpress doubt about the action 'eating' expressed by
the primary verbal form kha-īd-o; but in the second
example the same auxiliary V- expresses the past tense for
the action 'eating' expressed by the primary verbal form
kha-d-o.

10.2 Types of auxiliaries:

The auxiliaries are of two types:

- (1) Only auxiliary.
- (11) Primary cum-auxiliary.

The auxiliary of first type functions only as the auxiliary verb. It does not occur as a primary verb. There is only one auxiliary of such type, i.e. t - expressing beginning of the action.

The auxiliaries of second type function as the primary verbs when they occur alone but they function as the auxiliary verbs when they occur along with other - primary verbs.

The meaning, expressed by these verbs being used as the primary verbs, is different from the meaning expressed by them as the auxiliaries. The auxiliaries of the second type are listed below along with their primary and auxiliary meaning:

Verb	Primary meaning	Auxiliary meaning		
po	'fall down'	express continuity		
Ve	'sit'	express duration		
hu	'be'	express, doubt, condition, present and past.		

10.3 Conjugation of auxiliaries functioning as the primary:

as the primary verbs, all three auxiliaries are intransitive. The examples of their conjugation in all the simple formations are given below:

Imperative (2 Pl.)

po (po-o) 'you fall'
vy-o 'you sit'
hu-o 'you be '

Future imperative (2 Pl.)

po-ja 'you fall (hereafter)

Ve-ja 'you sit (hereafter)

hu-ja 'you be (hereafter)

Subjunctive (1 Sg.)

p-a 'I may fall'

Vy-a 'I may sit'

hU-a 'I may be'

Future (2 Pl.)

you will fall down'

Ve-"d-a 'you will sit down'

hu-"d-a 'you will be down'

Past (3 Pl.)

p-y-a

'they fell down'

Ve-th-a

they sat down!

hU-0-a

'they were'

10.4 Description and distribution of the auxiliaries:

(1) /t-/ Expresses beginning of an action.

It has two forms:

/te/

Which occurs after past participial,

15-1

Otherwise.

It occurs in the following formations:

Simple Present:

The auxiliary t- occurs with the Subjunctive form and that complex form functions as the Simple present, e.g.,

hal-8

(Subjunctive) 'he may move'

hal-8 t-0

(Present)

'he (just) moves'

101-0

(Subjunctive) 'he may hold'

Jal-e t-o

(Present) 'he (just) holds'

Past Cont. 1 :

The auxiliary -te occurs after the past-form and expresses the beginning of the action in the past. This formation has been termed as Past. Cont. 1, e. g.,

hol-y-o

(Past.) 'he moved'

hel-y-o to

(Past. Cont.1) 'he was (just)moving.

jel-e (Past) 'he held'

jal-e te (Past Cont.1) 'he was (just) holding'

Present Durative-1:

The auxiliary t- occurs after present Cont.1, and the whole extended complex form functions as the Durative-1. e.g.,

hal-3 p-y-o (pre.Cont.1) 'he is moving'

hal-3 p-y-o t-o (Pre.Dur.1) 'he is (continuously) moving'.

Jel-ive p-y-o (Pre. Cont. 1) 'he is holding'

jal-iya p-y-o t-o (Fre. Dur.1) 'he is (continuously) holding'

Present-Durative-2:

The auxiliary t- occurs after the Pre. Cont. 2 and the whole extended comples form functions as the Durative-2, e.g.

hal-6 Ve-th-o (Pre.Cont.2) 'he is moving (for long time)

hal-s Ve-th-o t-o (Pre. Dur. 2) 'he is (continuously) moving (for long time)

jol-e Ve-th-o (Pre.Con.2) 'he is holding (for long time)'

jal-e Ve-th-o t-o (Pre. Dur. 2) 'he is (continuously) holding (for long time)

Past Durative-1:

When the auxiliary -te is added to the Past.

Cont.1, the whole extended complex form functions as the Past Durative-1, e.g.,

hal-y-o p-ye (Past. Cont.1) 'he was moving'
hal-y-o p-ye- te (Past. Dur. 1) 'he was (contin ously)
moving'

jal-#-e p-ye (Past. Cont.1) 'he was holding'

jal-#-e p-ye te (Past. Dur.1) 'he was (continuously)
holding'

Past Durative -2 :

When the auxiliary -te is added to the Pest.

Cont.2, the whole extended complex form functions as Pest

Durative-2, e.g.

hel-y-o ve-the (Fast Cont-2) 'he was moving (for long time)'

hel-y-o ve-the te (Past Dur-2) 'he was (continuously) moving (for long time)'

jel-Ø-e ve-the (Past Dur.-2) 'he was holding (for long time)

jel-Ø-e ve-the te (Past Dur.-2) 'he was (continuously) holding (for long time)'

(11) Po 'fall down'

The past-participle of /po/, i.e. p-y- is used as an auxiliary. It has two forms: /p-ye/ which

occurs in the past and / p-y-/ which occurs elsewhere.

The auxiliary /po/ occurs in the following formations:

Present Continuations-1

The auxiliary p-y- is added to the Subjunctive form and the whole complex formation functions as present Cont. 1. e.g.,

hal-3	(Subjunctive)	'he may move'
hales p-y-o	(Pre.Cont. 1)	'he is moving'
jol-e	(Subjunctive)	'he may hold'
Jol-e p-y-o	(Pre.Cont1)	'he is holding'

Future Continuous-1:

The auxiliary p-y- occurs along with the future form and the whole complex formation functions as the Future-Cont.1, e.g.,

hal-nd-o	(Future)	'he will move'
hel-nd-o pry-o	(Fut.Cont.1)	'he will be moving'
jol-1d-0	(Future)	'he will hold'
jel-Id-o p-y-o	(Fut.Cont.1)	'he will be holding'

Past Continuous-2 :

The auxiliary p-ye is added to the past form and the whole complex formation functions as the past -

cont. -2, e.g.,

hal-y-o (Past.) 'he moved'
hal-y-o p-ye (Past.Cont.2) 'he was moving'

jal-Ø-e (Past) 'he held'

jal-Ø-e p-ye (Past Cont.2) 'he was holding'

(iii) ve 'sit'

The past participle of /ve/, i.e. ve-th is used as the auxiliary. It also has two forms: ve-th e which occurs along with the past forms and ve-th which occurs elsewhere.

This auxiliary is used in the following forma-

Present Continuous-2;

form and the whole complex formation functions as the present Cont.-2, e.g.,

hel-3	(Subjunctive)	'he may move'
hal-2 ve-th-o	(Pre.Cont.2)	'he is moving (for long time)'
jol-e	(subjunctive)	'he may hold'
jal-me ve-th-o	(Pre. Cont2)	'he is holding (for long time)'

Future Continuous - 2:

form, the complex formation functions as the Future Cont. -2., e.g.

hel-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'
hel-nd-o ve-th-o (Fut. Cont-2) 'he will be moving
(for the long
time)

Past Continuous -3 :

The complex formation functions as the past. Cont.3, in which the past form is followed by the - auxiliary ve-the, e.g.,

hel-y-o (Past) 'he moved'
hel-y-o ve-the (Past Cont.3) 'he was moving (for long time)'

jel-Ø-ē (Past) 'he held'

jel-Ø-ē ve-the (Past.Cont.3) 'he was holding (for long time.)'

(iv) hu 'be'

In comparison to all other auxiliaries, /hu/
has very wide distribution. Its different forms express.
doubt, Subjunctive mood, present, and past tenses. As

the auxiliary, it has the following forms:

/hu-"d-/ The future participle of hu 'be', is used to express doubt, e.g.,

hel-nd-o (Future) 'he will move' hel-nd-o hu-d-o (Dub. Fut.) 'he might be moving'

/v-/ When it takes the suffixes from PNM-3 (Int.)

it functions as Subjunctive but when it takes

the suffixes from the PNG-4 (Int.) or PNG-5(tr.)

it functions as the past, e.g.,

hal-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'
hal-nd-o V-: (Fut. Subj.) 'he may be moving'
hal-nd-o V-o (Habitual past) 'he used to move'

Here, in the second example V- auxiliary takes the Suffixes from the PNM-8 (Int.) and functions as the Subjunctive. In the example three it takes the suffixes from the PNG-4 and functions as the past. In this - example hel-nd- being occurred with temporal auxiliary, is habitual and hence the formation is past habitual.

/a-/ It takes the suffixes from the PNM-3(tr.) and functions as the present form in all the combinative formations as well as the Simple formations of to be verb, e.g.,

a-iya (Present) 'I am' hal-nd-o a-iya (Pre. Hab.) 'I use to move' of the verb 'to be' and in the second example, a-iya expresses ' present tense' along with the habitual form hal-nd-o.

It is notable that in the Simple formations, the present tense is expressed only by the auxiliary hu (form /9-/). No other verb expresses the present tense in the Simple formations.

hu is somehow different from the other auxi liaries as it is closed and rigid while other auxiliaries
are open and flexible. 'closed' auxiliary means which
closes the construction and is not followed by any other auxiliary. Here'rigid' means which always occurs
after the primary verb. Its order can not be changed.

/hu-"d-/ The future participle of hu 'be' occurs in the following formations:

Puture-Dubious:

The auxiliary hu-d- occurs after the future form and the complex formation functions as Future Dubi-ous, e.g.,

hel-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'
hel-nd-o hu-d-o (Fut. Dubi.) 'he might be moving'

jel-id-o (Future) 'he will hold'

jel-id-o hu-d-o (Fut. Dub.) 'he might be holding'

Past Dubious :

when the auxiliary /hu-d-/ occurs after the past form, the formation functions as the Past-Dubious, e.g.

hel-y-o (Bast) 'he moved'

hal-y-o hu-d-o (Past-Dub.) 'he might have moved'

jol-Ø-ē (Past) 'he held'

jal-0-e hu-d-e (Past. Dub.) 'he might have held'

/V-/ This auxiliary occurs in the following forma-

Future Subjunctive:

The auxiliary V- occurs after the future form and the complex formation functions as Future Subjunctive, e.g.,

hol-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'

hal-nd-o V-S (Fut. Subj.) 'he may be moving'

Jol-id-o (Puture) 'he will hold'

jel-id-o V-S (Fut. Subj.) 'he may be holding'

Past Subjunctive :

when the auxiliary V- occurs after a past form, the formatio functions as the Past-Subjunctive, e.g.,

hal-y-o (Past) 'he moved'

hal-y-o V-3 (Past. Subj.) 'he may have moved'

jol-Ø-e (Past) 'he held'

jol-#-@ V-S (Past Subj.) 'he may have held'

Habitual Past:

The auxiliary V- occurs after the future form and the complex formation functions as Habitual Past, e.g.

hol-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'

hol-nd-o V-o (Habi. Past.) 'he used to move'

jol-id-o (Future) 'he will hold'

jol-id-o V-o (Habi. Past) 'he used to hold'

Habitual Past Continuous :

When the auxiliary V- occurs after Future Cont -1, the whole extended complex formation functions as the Habitual Past Continuous, e.g.,

hel-nd-o p-y-o (Fut. Cont.1) 'he will be moving'

hal-nd-o p-y-o V-o (Habi.Past. 'he (continuously)
Cont.) used to move'

jol-id-o p-y-o (Fut.Cont.1) 'he will be holding'

jol-id-o p-y-o V-o (Habi. Past 'he (continuously)
Cont.) used to hold'

Perfect Past:

When the suxiliary V- occurs after past form, the whole complex formation, functions as the perfect - past, e.g.

hol-y-o (Fast) 'he moved'

hal-y-o V-o (Perf. Past) 'he had moved'

jol-Ø-e (Past) 'he held'

Jol-Ø-e V-e (Perfect. Past) 'he had held'

/a-/ Aimiliary occurs in the following formations:

Habitual Present:

When the auxiliary />-/ occurs after the future form, the complex formation functions as the Habitual - Present, e.g.,

hal-nd-o (Future) 'he will move'

hel-nd-o ay (Habi. Pre.) 'he uses to move'

jel-Id-o (Future) 'he will hold'

jal-id-o ay (Habi, Pre.) 'he uses to hold'

Habitual Present Continuous 1

The auxiliary / - / occurs after the future Cont.1 and the whole extended complex formation: functions as the Habitual Present Continuous, e.g.,

hal-nd-o p-y-o (Fut.Cont.1) 'he will be moving'

hal-nd-o p-y-o ay (Habi. Pre. Cont.) 'he (continuously) uses to move.

jal-id-o p-y-o (Fut.Cont.1) 'he will be holding'

jal-id-o p-y-o ay (Habi. Pre. Cont.) 'he (continuously) uses to hold'

Perfect Present :

The auxiliary /9-/ occurs after the past form and the formation functions as the Perfect Present, e.g.,

hel-y-o (Past) 'he moved'
hel-y-o ay (Perfect Pre.) 'he has moved'

jel-Ø-ē (Past) 'he held'

jel-Ø-ē ay (Perfect.Pre.) 'he has held'

安安安安安安安安安安

CHAPTER

11

CONJUGATION OF THE COMPLEX FORMATIONS

11.1 List of the Complex formations:

1.	Present "I	
2.	Present Continuous - 1	Unextended
3.	Present Continuous - 2 _1	
4.	Present Durative - 1	Extended
8.	Present Durative - 2 _ i	
6.	Future Continuous - 1 -1	
7.	Future Continuous - 2	
8.	Future Dubious	******
9.	Future Subjunctive	Unextended
10.	Habitual Present	
11.	Habitual Past	
12.	Habitual Present Continuous	Extended
19.	Habitual Past Continuous _I	

14. Past Continuous - 1

15. Past Continuous - 2

16. Past Continuous - 3

17. Past Dubious

18. Past Subjunctive

19. Perfect Present

20. Perfect Past

21. Past Durative - 1

22. Past Durative - 2

Unextended

Extended

11.2 Present tense :

Formula : Subjunctive + t- (aux.) +NG = Present tense.

gives rise to the Simple Subjunctive form. When the auxiliary t-, followed by the suffix NG, occurs along with the subjunctive form, the whole complex construction functions as the simple present. The gender distinction is observed only in the suxiliary. Hence, the gender is indicated - below the auxiliary.

From Simple V-stems

hal-a t-o 'I move, etc.'

<u>Sg.</u>

l hal-a tmo / t-1 hal-o t-a / t-yū
(m.f.) (f)

2 hal-e " " hal-o (m) "

3 hal-s " " hal-e " "

```
Jol-iya t-o
                           ' I hold', etc.,
                                   P1.
          Sg.
l jel-iya
          t-0 / t-1
                           jel-yu t-a / t-yu
                                   (m.f) (f)
           (m)
2 jul-iye
                           jel-yo (m.)
                  12
                                    11
                           jol-iye
3 jel-e
          mar-iya t-o
                           ' I kill, etc.,'
                           mar-yu t-a / t-yu (m.f.) (f)
1 mar-iya
           t-0 / t-1
           (m)
                   12
2 mar-iye
                           mar-yo (m)
                   41
                                    11
                           mar-ive
3 mar-e
From First causal:
hol-a-e
         t-0
                  (m.3 Sg.)
                                  '(he) causes to move'
                  (f. " )
hal-a-e
        2-1
                                  '(she) causes to move!
From Second causal:
hel-a-ra-e t-o
                 (m. 3 Sg. )
                                  '(he) causes (one) to
                                   get (some one) moved!
hal-a-ra-e t-i
                  (f. " )
                                  '(she) causes (one) to
                                   get (some one) moved'
From Passive:
101-1-8 t-0
                  (m. 3 Sg. )
                                 '(he) is held'
jol-j-6 t-1
                  (f. n )
                                  '(she) is held'
From first causal passive:
hal-a-j-3 t-o (m. 3 Sg.)
                                  '(he) is caused to be
                                   moved !
                  (8"
hol-a-j-8 t-1
                                   '(she) is caused to
                                   be moved'
```

From Second causal passive:

hel-a-ra-j-8 t-o (m. 3 Sg.)

'(he) is caused to be got moved'

hal-a-ra-j-3 t-i (f. #)

'(she) is caused to be got moved'

11.3 Present Continuous-1 :

Formula: Subjunctive + p-y- (aux.PP of /pof fall) + NG = Present Cont. 1.

The present Cont. 1 is formed by putting up the past participle p-y- of the auxiliary /po/ 'fall ' after the Subjunctive form (V. Stem + PNM 3). The time gender distion is observed only in the auxiliary.

From Simple V-Stems:

	hal-3	р-у-о	'(he) :	is moving	, etc.'
	Sg.			<u>P1</u> .	
1 hel-a	p-y-o /	pa-Ø-i (f)	hal-õ		p3-\$-yū (1)
2 hal-ē	"		hol-0	(m)	(f)
3 hal-8	н		hol-ë		n
	jel-e	p-y-0	'he is	holding,	etc.,*
1 jel-iy	ā p-y-o/s		j∍1-yũ		p9-Ø-yū (f)
2 Jol-1y	e n	n	Jol-yo	(m)	n
3 Jol-e			Jol-1ye	j "	

'he is killing, etc.' mar-e p-y-0 P1. Sg. 1 mar-iya p-y-o/ps-p-1 martyn р-у-а / рэ-р-уи (m.f) EE. 2 mar-iye (m) mar-yo mar-iyo 3 mar-o From First causal: hol-a-e p-y-o (m. S Sg.) '(he) is causing to move ! hol-a-e po-Ø-i (f. " '(she) is causing to move ! From Second causal : hel-a-ra-e p-y-o (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) is causing (one) to get (some one) moved ! hel-a- ra-e pe-#-i(f. '(she) is causing (one) to get (some one) moved. From Passive: '(he) is being held' jel-j-8 p-y-0 (m. 8 Sg.) jal-j-8 pa-0-1 (1. ") '(she) is being held' From First causal passive: '(he)is being caused hal-a-j-s p-y-o (m. 3 Sg.) to be moved! hal-a-j-8 pa-p-1 (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be moved.

From Second causal passive:

hel-a-ra-j-3 p-y-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is being caused to be got moved'

hel-a-ra-j-3 pe-Ø-i (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be got moved'

11.4 Present Continuous 2 :

Formula: Subjuctive + Ve-th (aux.PP. of /Ve/ 'sit')
+ NG = Present Cont.2.

The present Cont.2 is formed by putting the auxiliary Ve-th-having suffix from set NG, after the Subjunctive form (V. stem 4 + PNM 3). The gender - distinction is observed in the auxiliary.

From Simple V. stems:

hal-3 ve-th-o '(he) is moving (for longtime) etc.'

<u>P1</u>.

1	həl-ã	ve-th-o/	ve-th-i	hal-o	ve-th-a /	ve-th-yū (f)
2	hal-ë	**	11	hel-e	(m)	n
3	hal-8			hal-ë	n	n

jal-e ve-th-o '(he) is holding (for long-time) etc.

l jel-iya ve-th-o / ve-th-i jel-yu ve-tha / ve-th-yu (m.f.) (f)

2 jel-iye " " jel-yo (m) "

3 jol-e " " jol-iye " "

mar-e ve-th-o '(he) is killing(for longtime), etc.,

mar-iye

Sg.

1 mar-iya ve-tho/ve-th-i mar-yu ve-th-a / ve-th-yu (m.f.) (f)

2 mar-iye " mar-yo (m) "

From First causal:

3 mar-e

hal-a-e ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is causing to move (for long-time)'

hal-a-e ve-th-i (f. ") '(she) is causing to move (for long-time).'

From Second causal:

hal-a-ra-e ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is causing (one) to get (some one) moved (for long-time)

hal-a-ra-e ve-th-i (f. ") '(she) is causing (one) to get (some one) moved (for long-time)

From Passive:

jal-j-s ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is being held (for long time)'

jol-j-3 ve-th-i (f. ") '(she) is being held (for long time)'

From First causal passive:

hal-a-j-S ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is being caused to be moved (for long time)

hal-a-j-8 ve-th-i (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be moved (for long time)

From Second causal passive:

hal-a-ra-j-3 ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is being caused to be got moved (for long-time)'

hel-a-ra-j-6 ve-th-1 (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be got moved (for long time)'

11.5 Present Durative-1 :

Formula: Pre. Cont. 1 + t- (aux.) + NO = Pre. Dur. 1.

The present durative is formed by putting up the auxiliary t-followed by a suffix NO, with present continuous-1. (Subj+ p= y-+NG). The gender distinction is observed in both the auxiliaries.

From Simple V-stems:

hal-3 p-y-o t-o '(he) is (continuously) moving etc.,

1 hal-a p-y-o t-o /

(2)

2 hol-ë " "

həl-o p-y-a t-a (m) pə-# yu t-yu (r)

3 holes " "

1 jel-iya p-y-o t-o/

hol-o " "

'(he) is (continuously)

jel-e p-y-o t-o

holding etc., jol-yū p-y-a t-a /po-#-yū t-yū (m.f.) (f.)

pa-Ø-i t-i (f.)

j∍1-yɔ p-y-a t-a/p∍-Ø-yū t-yū (f)

2 jol-iye

mar-e p-y-o t-o '(he) is (continuously) killing, etc.,'

Sg.

P1.

1 mar-iya p-y-o t-o mar-yu p-y-a t-a/ps-\$/-yu t-yu (m.) (m.f.) (f.)

ps-\$\phi\$-i t-i (f.)

2 mar-iya " mar-yo p-y-a t-a/ps-\$/-yu t-yu (m.f.)

From First causal:

3 mar-e

hal-a-e p-y-o t-o (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) is causing to (continuously) move' hal-a-e pa-Ø-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is causing to (continuously) move'

mar-ive

From Second causal:

hal-a-ra-e p-y-o t-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is causing (one) to get (some one) - (continuously) moved'

hal-a-ra-e pa-#-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is causing (one) to get (some one) - (continuously) moved '

From Passive:

jal-j-S p-y-o t-o (m. S Sg.) '(he) is being (continuously) held'

jal-j-3 pa-Ø-1 t-i (f. ") '(she) is being (continuously) held'

From First causal passive:

hal-a-j-d p-y-o t-o (m. 3 Sg.)'(he) is being caused to be (continuously)moved.'

hol-a-j-d pa-p-i t-i (f. ")'(she) is being caused to be (continuously) moved'.

From Second causal passive:

hol-a-ra-j-3 p-y-o t-o (m.3 Sg.) '(he) is being caused to be (continuously) got moved'

hal-a-ra-j-3 pa-Ø-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be (continuously) got moved.'

11.6 Present Durative-2 :

Formula: Pre. Cont.2 + t-(aux.) + NG = pre. Dur. 2.

The pre. cont. (Subj + ve-th-+NG), followed by the auxiliary t- with NG suffix, forms the present Durative-2. The gender distinction is observed in both the auxiliaries.

From Simple V-stem.

hal-3 ve-th-o t-o '(he) (continuously) moving (for long time) etc.,

Sg. Pl.

1 hal-a ve-th-o t-o/ hal-o ve-th-a t-a/

(m)

ve-th-1 t-1

(f)

2 hal-e

" hal-o ve-th-a t-a/

(m)

(m)

(f)

2 hal-e

" hal-o ve-th-a t-a/

(m)

ve-th-yū t-yū

(f)

jel-e ve-th-o t-o '(he) is (continuously) holding (for long time)

<u>p</u>.

1 jel-iya ve-th-o t-o/ jel-yū ve-th-a t-a/
(m)

ve-th-i t-i

(f)

ve-th-yū t-yū
(f)

2 Jel-1ye (M) " Jel-ye ve-th-a t-a/
(m)
ve-th- yu t-yu
(f)

3 jol-0 " " jol-1ye " "

mar-e ve-th-o t-o'he is (continuously) killing (for long time) etc.,

1 mar-iya ve-th-o t-o/ mar-yu ve-th-a t-a /
(m) (m.f.)
ve-th-i t-i ve-th-yu t-yu
(f)

2 mar-iye " " mar-yo ve-th-a t-a/
(m)
ve-th-yū t-yū
(f)

S mar-e " mar-iyê " "

From first causal:

hal-a-e ve-th-o t-o (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) is causing to (continuously) move (for long time)'

hel-a-e ve-th-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is causing to (continuously) move (for long time)

From Second causal:

hel-a-ra-e ve-th-o t-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is causing (one) to (continuously)get (some one) moved - (for long time)'

hel-a-ra-e ve-th-i t-i (f. 8 Sg.)'(she) is causing (one) to (continuously)get (some one)moved (for long time)'

From Passive:

jel-j-8 ve-th-o t-o (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) is being held (for long time)

jel-j-3 ve-th-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is being held (for long time.

From First causal passive:

hel-a-j-S ve-th-o t-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is being caused to be (continuously) moved (for long time)'

hel-a-j-S ve-th-i t-i (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be (continuously) moved (for long time)'

From Sedond causal passive:

hal-a-ra-j-S ve-th-o t-o (m. 3Sg.) '(he) is being caused tobe (continuously) got moved (for long time)'

hel-a-ra-j-2 ve-th -i t-i (f. ") '(she) is being caused to be (continuously) get moved (for long time)'

11.7 Future Continuous-1

Formula: Future + p-y-(aux.PP of/po/'fall')+NG=Fut.Cont.1.

The future continuous 1 is formed by combining the future and the auxiliary p-y-, expressing continuity, followed by any suffix from NG set. The gender distinc - tion is observed in the primary as well as in the auxiliary

hence the paradigms for masculine and feminine are given separately.

From Simple V.stems

(Masculine)

hel-nd-o p-y-o '(he) will be moving, etc., '

Sg. Pl.

1 hal-nd-o-(se) p-y-o hal-nd-a-(si) p-y-a

2 hal-nd-e " hal-nd-a "

3 hal-nd-o " hal-nd-a "

jol-id-o p-y-o '(he) will be holding, etc.'

1 jel-id-o (se) p-y-o jel-id-a-(si) p-y-a

2 jel-īd-e " jel-īd-a "

8 jol-1d-0 " jol-1d-a "

mar-id-o p-y-o '(he) will be killing, etc.'

1 mar-Id-o-(se) p-y-o mar-Id-a-(si) p-y-a

2 mar-Id-e " mar-Id-a "

3 mar-id-o " mar-id-a "

(Feminine)

hal-nd-i pa-#-i '(she) will be moving etc.,'

1 həl-nd-i(ya)-(se) həl-nd-a-(si) p-y-a ~ pə-Ø-i həl-nd-yū(s-i)pə-Ø-yū

-11-

2 hel-nd-ie " hel-nd-yū "

3 hal-nd-1 " " "

jal-id-i pa-/-i '(she) will be holding, etc., '

SE. Pl.

1 jol-1d-1(ya)-(se) po-0-1 jol-1d-a-(si) p-y-a

jəl-īd-yū-(sī) pə-∅-yū -in-

2 jel-id-ie " jel-id-yū

3 jol-īd-i " " "

war-Id- pa-#-i '(she) will be killing, etc. '

1 mar-īd-1 (ya)-sē po-Ø-1 mar-īd-a-(sī) p-y-a ~ mar-īd-yū (sī) po-Ø-yū -in-

2 mar-îd-ië " mar-îd-yû -in-

3 mar-Id-i " mar-Id-yū "

From first causal:

hal-a-id-o p-y-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) will be causing to move'

hal-a-id-i pa-Ø-i (f. ") '(she) will be causing to move.'

From Second causal:

hal-a-ra-Id-o p-y-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) will be causing (one) to get (someone) moved.'

hal-a-ra-id-i pa-Ø-i (f. ") '(she) will be causing (one) to get (someone) moved'

From Passive:

jol-a-d-i po-Ø-i (f. ") '(she) will be being held'

From Causal passive:

jal-a-ra-#-"d-i pa-#-i (f. 3 Sg.) '(she) will be being caused to be got held'

11.8 Future Continuous 2:

Formula: Future+ve-th-{aux. PP of /ve/ 'sit')+NG=Fut. Cont. 2.

The future continuous2, is formed by putting up the auxiliary ve-th-followed by any suffix from the NG set, after the future form (Fut. participle + PNG 4). Like the Fut. cont. 1, the gender distinction is - observed in the primary and the auxiliary verbs.

From Simple V-stems

(Masculine)

hel-nd-o ve-th-o '(he) will be moving (for long time), etc.,

Sg. Pl.

1 hal-nd-o(se) ve-th-o hal-nd-a(si) ve-th-a

2 hal-nd-e " hal-nd-a "

3 hal-nd-o " " "

jol-id-o ve-th-o, '(he) will be holding (for long time) etc.,'

P1. 1 301-1d-o(se) ve-th-o jol-id-a-(si) ve-th-a 2 jal-1d-e Jol-id-a 3 jel-id-o Jol-id-a mar-id-o ve-th-o '(he) will be killing (for long time) ! 1 mar-Id-o(se) ve-th-o mar-īd-a(sī) ve-th-a 2 mar-1d-e mar-id - a 3 mar-1d-0 mar-Id- a (Feminine) hal-nd-i ve-th-i '(she) will be moving (for long time)etc., 1 hol-nd-i(ya)-(se) ve-th-i hol-nd-a(si) ve-th-a hal-nd-yu-(si) ve-th-yu 2 hol-nd-ie hal-nd-yu -17--71-3 hel-nd-1 82 hal-nd-yu -27 jol-id-i ve-thi '(she) will be holding (for long time) etc. 1 jol-id-i(ya)-(se) ve-th-i jol-id-a (si) ve-th-a jal-īd-yū (sī)ve-th-yū -1n-2 jol-1 d- 10 j∍1-īd-yũ 22 -in--in-

\$2.

3 Jol-1d-1

mar-id-i ve-th-i '(she) will be killing (for long time) etc., Se. 1 mar-id-1(ya)-(se) ve-th-1 mar-1d-a-(si) ve-th-a mar-id-yu-(si) ve-th-yu 2 mar-Id-1e mar-Id-yu 3 mar-id-i mar-id-yu From First causal: hal-a-id-o ve-th-o- (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) will cause to move (for long time) hal-a-id-i ve-th-i (f. '(she) will cause to move (for long time)' From Second causal: hel-a-ra-id-o ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) will cause (one) to get (some one) moved (for long time) hol-a-ra-id-i ve-th-i (f.) '(she) will cause (one) to get (some-one) moved (for long-time) * From Passive: jol-a- d-o ve-th-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) will be being held (for long time) 1 jel-a- d-i ve-th-i (f. '(she) will be being held (for longtime) From Causal passive: jel-a-ra-%-"d-o ve-th-6 (3rd m. Sg.)'(he)will be being caused to be got held (for long time)

jel-a-ra-%- d-i ve-th-i (" f.") '(she)will be being caused to be got held (for long time)

11.9 Future Dubious:

Formula: Future+hu-d-(aux.FP of /hu/'be')+PNG-4=Fut. Dubias.

The Puture Dubious is a complex formation which is formed by combining the future (FP +NC) and the auxi - liery hu-"d followed by any suffix from the set PNG-4.

The gender distinction is observed in both the verbs viz. the primary and the auxiliary.

In this formation, the additional personal = suffixes se and -si, instead of primary verb, are optionally added to the auxiliary verb.

The distinction of person is observed by the auxiliary and not by the primary verb.

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-nd-o hu-"d-o '(he) might be moving etc., '

<u>P1.</u>

1 hal-nd-o hu-d-o(se) hal-nd-a hu-d-a (si)

2 " hu-d-e " hu-d-a

3 " hu-d-o " " "

jol-id-o hu-d-o '(he)might be holdingetc.,'

1 jol-1d-o hu- "d-o(se) jol-1d-a hu-d-a (si)

2 / " hu-d-e " hu-d-a

3 " hu-"d-0 " " "

```
mar-id-o hu- d-o '(he) might be killing, etc. '
                                     Pl.
           Sr.
 1 mar-id-o hu-d-o-(se) mar-id-a hu-d-a (si)
            hu- d-e
                                       hu- d-a
 2
            hu- d-o
                                 $1
           (Feminine)
           hal-nd-i hu- d-i '(she) might be moving, etc.'
 1 hal-nd-i hu- d-i(ya)-(se) hal-nd-a hu- d-a-(si) -
                               hal-nd-yu hu- d-yu (si)
                               hal-nd-yu hu- d-yu
           hu- d-i e
              -77-
           hu-d-1
           jel-id-i hu- d-i '(she) might be holding, etc.'
1 jol -id-1 hu-d-1 (ya)-(se) jol-id-a hu-d-a-(si) -
                               jol-id-yu hu- d-yu-(si)
           hu-d-ie
                               Jal-id-yu hu- d-yu
               -73-
                                  -in-
           hu- d-i
           mar-id-i hu-d-1 '(she)might be killing etc.,'
 1 mar-id-i hu-d-i(ya)-so mar-id-a hu-d-a-(si) ~
                               mar-Id-yu hu-d-yu-(si)
                                  -in-
            hu-d-le
                               mar-Id-yu hu- d-yu
 2
               *** [ ] ***
                                  -in-
                                             40-E) 400
            hu- d-1
 3
```

From First causal:

hal-a-id-o hu-d-o (m 3 Sg.) '(he) might be causing to move'

hal-a-id-i hu-"d-i (f ") '(she) might be causing to move'

From Second causal:

hal-a-ra-id-o hu-d-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) might be causing (one) to get (someone) moved'

hal-a-ra-id-i hu-d-i (f. ") '(she) might be causing (one) to get (someone) moved'

From Passive:

jal-a-d-o hu-d-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) might be held'
jal-a-d-i hu-d-i (f. ") '(she) might be held'

From Causal passive:

jol-a-ra-\$-d-o hu-d-o (m. S Sg) '(He)might be caused to be got held'

jal-a-ra-p-d-i hu-d-i (f. ") '(she) might be caused to be got held'

11.10 Future Subjunctive:

Formula: Future + v-(aux.allomorph of /hu/'be') + PNM-8 (Int.) = Future Subjunctive.

The auxiliary V- gives the meaning of Subjunctive when it takes the suffix from PNM-3 (Int.). Thus when the subjunctive form of V- is combined with the - future form, the complex form functions as the Future - Subjunctive.

The gender is observed only in the primary verb. As the primary verb takes suffix from the set NG It does not distinguish person. The person is distinguished by the auxiliary.

The additional optional suffixes -se and -si are not used in this construction.

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

	hel-nd-o v-3		'(he) may be	moving, etc.
	SE		<u>P1</u> .	
1 h	01-nd-0	v-ã	hel-nd- a	v-0
2		V-0		v-0.
3	"	V=8		v-ë
	ja:	1- Id-o v-3	(he) may be ho	olding, etc.,
1 3	91-îd-0	v-ã	jel-īd-a	v-õ
2	n .	v-ë	"	V-0
3	n	V-8	"	v-ë
	ma	r-īd-o v-d	'(he) may be	killing etc.,

1 mar-1d-0		v-ā	mar-Id-a	v-õ	
8	n	v-ë		c-v	
3	n	V-3	"	V-9	

(Feminine)

hal-nd-i v-3 '(she)may be moving etc.,'

	S. S. S.	E.	<u>P1.</u>	
1	hel-nd-1	v-ã	həl-nd-yū - həl-nd-a	v-ô
2	n n	v-ë		v-o
3		v-3	•	v-ë
	J	ol-īd-i v 8	'(she) may be holding	, etc.
1	jal-1d-1	v-ā	jol-Td-yū - jol-Td-a	v-õ
2	**	v-ë	"	v-0
3	n	v-3		v-ē
	m	ar-īd-1 v-3	'(she) may be killing	, etc
1	mar-îd-i	v-ã	mar-īd-yū - mar-īd-a	v-õ
2	п	v-ë	"	v-0
3	n	V=3	n	v-e

hol-a-Id-o v-3	(m 3 Sg.)	'(he) may be causing to move'
hel-a-id-i v-i	(f. ")	'(she) may be causing to move'

From second causal:

hol-a-ra-Id-o	V-8	(m. 8 Sg.)	'(he) may be causing (one) to get (some- one) moved'
hel-a-ra-id-i	V-8	(f. ")	'(she) may be causing (one) to get (some-one) moved'

From Passive:

jal-a-d-o v-3 (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) may be being held '
jal-a-d-i v-3 (f. ") '(she) may be being held '

From Causal passive:

hel-a-ra-p-"d-o v-3 (m 3 Sg.) '(he) may be being caused to be got moved.'

hal-a-ra-p-"d-i v-3 (f. ") '(she)may be being caused to be got moved.'

11.11 Habitual Present:

Formula: Future+>(aux.allomorph of /hu/'be')+PNM-3(tr.)
= Habitual present.

The future form functions as the habitual when it occurs along with the temporal auxiliaries. Thus, when the auxiliary >- expressing present, is added to the future form, the construction functions as the Habitual Present.

As the primary verb is followed by the suffix NG, it indicates the gender but not the person. On the other hand, the auxiliary is followed by the suffix PNM-8 (tr.), hence, it expresses the person and not the gender. The number is the common category which is expressed by both the verbs; the primary and the auxiliary.

-se and -si, the additional suffixes are not used in this construction.

From Simple V. stems-

hal-nd-o ay '(he) uses to move, etc., 显在。 P1. 1 hol-nd-o/hol-nd-i a-iya hol-nd-a/hol-nd-yu a-yu (f) (m.f.) m (m) 2 9-1 ve 3-40 0-1 3 8*3 jol-id-o ay '(he)uses to hold, etc., 1 jel-i d-o/jel-id-i e-iya jel-id-a/jel-id-yu e-yu -111-(m) (f) (m.f.) (1) 2 (m) a-ya 3 3-1 mar-Id-o sy '(he) uses to kill, 'etc. 1 mer-id-o/mer-id-i s-iya mer-id-s/mer-id-yu s-yu (m) (2) (m.f.) (1) 8 22 38 9-yo n-1 H

From First Causal:

hel-a-id-o a-y (m. 3 Sg.) '(he)uses to get (some one) moved'
hel-aid-i ay (f. ") '(She) uses to get (some one) moved.'

From Second causal:

hal-a-ra-id-o ay (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) uses to cause (one) to get (some-one) moved'
hal-a-ra-id-i ay (f. ") '(she) uses to cause (one) to get (some-one) moved.'

From Passive:

jal-a-d-o ay (m 3 Sg.) '(he) is used to be
held.'

jal-a-d-i ay (f ") '(she) is used to be
held.'

From Causal Passive:

hal-a-ra-ø-d-o ay (m 3 Sg.) '(he) is used to be got moved'
hal-a-ra-ø-d-i ay (f ") '(she) is used to be got moved'

11.12 Habitual Past:

Formula: Future + V_(aux.allomorph of /hu/'be') + FNH-4 = Habitual Past.

As the habitual present is formed by combining the future and the auxiliary, expressing present tense, at the habitual past is formed by combining the future and the auxiliary expressing past. Here also the gender is expressed by the primary as well as by the aux. The expressed by the primary as well as by the aux. The edditional suffixes -se and -si are optionally added to the auxiliary and not to the primary verb.

From Simple V-stems:

. (Masculine)

hal-nd-o vo '(he) used to move etc.,'

1 hal-nd-o v-o-(se) hal-nd-a v-a-(si)
2 " v-e " v-s
3 " v-o " "

jel-id-o v-o '(he) used to hold etc.,'

1 jel-id-o v-o(s e) jel-id-a v-a (si)

2 " v-e " v-a

3 " v-o " "

mar-īd-v-o '(he)used to kill, etc.,'

1 mar-īd-o v-o (se) mar-īd- v-a-(sī)

2 " v-e " v-a

3 " v-o " "

(Feminine)

hal-nd-i v-i '(she) used to move, etc.'

hal-nd-i v-i(ya)-se hal-nd-a v-a-(si) hal-nd-yū v-yū-(si)

-73-

v-ië "v-yũ

'(she) used to hold etc. '

101-1d-1 v-1

```
PL.
          Se.
                           101-Id-a v-a-(sī) -
1 jol-id-1 v-1 (ya)(se)
                           jel-ld-yu v-yu-(sl)
                              -in-
           v-ie
      17
                                      V-yu
           V-1
                           '(she) used to kill, etc.,'
          mar-id-i v-i
1 mar-id-1 v-1 (ya) (-se)
                           mar-id-a v-a-(si) _
                           mar-Id-yu v-yu-(si)
                              -in-
           v-ie
                                      v-yu
           V-1
From: First causal :
hel-a-id-o v-o (m. 3 Sg.)
                                  '(he) used to get
                                  (some one) moved'
hol-a-id-i v-i
                   (2. ")
                                  '(she used to get
                                   (some one) moved.
From Second causal:
hel-a-ra-id-o v-o (m 3 Sg.)
                                  '(he) used to cause
                                  (one) to get (someone)
                                   moved!
hol-a-ra-id-i v-i (f
                                  '(she)used to cause
                                   (one) to get (someone)
```

From Causal passivet

hal-a-ra-p-d-o v-o (m. 3 sg.) '(he) was used to be got moved'

hol-a-ra-#-"d-i v-i (f. ") '(she) was used to be got moved.'

11.13 Habitual Present Continuous;

Formula: Put.Cont-1 +a-(aux.)PNM-8(tr.) = Habitual - present Continuous.

The auxiliary a-always expresses the present tense. The future becomes habitual when it occurs along with any temporal auxiliary. Thus the combination of future continuous-1 and the auxiliary a- gives the meaning of Habitual Present Continuous; the extended complex - construction.

The gender is expressed by primary and the auxiliary p-y-. The person is expressed by the auxiliary

The additional suffixes -se and -si are not used in this construction.

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-nd-o p-y-o ay '(he)(continuously)uses to

SE.

1 hal-nd-o p-y-o a-iya hal-nd-a p-y-a a-yu
2 " " a-iya " " a-yo
3 " " a-y " " a-ī

jol-id-o p-y-o ay '(he)(continuously) uses to hold'

Sg. Pl. 1 jal-id-o p-y-o a-iya jol-id-a p-y-a 棚 カーソル a-iye 9 -y 9 a-1 mar-id-o p-y-o ay'(he) (continuously) uses to kill! 1 mar-id-o p-y-o p-iya mar-id-a p-y-a a-ive 3-40 a-y (Feminine) hal-nd-i pa-Ø-i ay '(she)(continuously) uses to move etc.,' 1 hol-nd-i po-i o-iya hal-nd-a p-y-a a-yu ~ hal-nd-yu pa-p-yu a-yu o-iye a-y jal-id-i pa-#-i ay '(she)(continuously) uses to hold etc.,' jol-Id-a p-y-a b-yu ~ 1 191-Id-1 pa-#-1 a-1ya Jal-Id-yu pa-Ø-yu a-yu -1Da-iye 9-yo

EF

a-y

3-1

mar-id-i pa-Ø-i ay '(She)(continuously) uses to kill etc.'

Sg.

Pl.

1 mar-ĩd-i p∍-Ø-i ∍-iyã mar-ĩd-a p-y-a- ∍-yũ ~ mar-ĩd-yũ p∍-Ø-yũ ∍-yũ -in-

2 " " a-iya " " a-ya

8 " " a-y " " a-1

From First Cousel:

hal-a-id-o p-y-o a- (m. 3 5g.) '(he) uses to get (some one) (continu-ously) moved'

hal-a-Id-i pa-A-i a-y (f. ") '(she) uses to get (some one) (continu-ously) moved'

Prom Second Causal:

hal-a-ra-id-o p-y-o a-y (m. 3 Sg.) '(he)uses to cause (one) to get (some-one) (continuously) moved'

hal-a-ra-id-i pa-Ø-i a-y(f. "") '(she) uses to cause (one) to get (some-(one)(continuously) moved'

From Possive:

jol-a-d-o p-y-o a-y (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) is used to be (continuously) held'

jol-a-d-i po-Ø-i a-y (f. ") '(she) is used to be (continuously) held'

From Causal passive:

hal-a-ra-#-"d-o p-y-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) is used to be (continuously) got moved'

hal-a-ra-#-"d-i pa-#-i a-y(f.") '(she) is used to be (continuously) got moved'

11 . 14 Habitual Past Continuous:

Formula: Fut. Cont. 1+v-(aux.)+PNM-4=Habitual Past Continuous

when the future con. -1 is combined with the auxiliary v-, expressing past, this extended complex - construction functions as the Habitual Past Continuous.

In this construction the number and the gender is expressed by all the three verbs, viz. primary, first auxiliary p-y-o expressing continuity and the second - auxiliary v- expressing past. The person is expressed only by the temporal auxiliary v-.

The additional suffixes -se and -si can be optionally added to the temporal auxiliary V-.

From Simple V-steme:

(Masculine)
hal-nd-o p-y-o '(he) used to (continuously)
-v-o move, etc.'

2 " " V-e " " V-a
3 " " V-o " " " "

jal-id-o p-y-o V-o '(he) used to (continuously) hold etc.'

	1	E.		<u>P1</u>			
1 je	1-1d-0	p-y-0	V-o(-se) j	91-1d-a p	у-у-а	V-a (-sī)
2	"		V-e	n	"	V-a	
8	n	11	V-0	n	11	11	
	n	er-Id-	-o p-y-o V-o	'(he) use		(conti	nuously)
1 ma	r-īd-o	p-y-0	V-o(-se) m	ar-Id-a	y-y-a	V-a (-sĩ)
2	n	m	V-e	"	n	V-a	
8		n	V-0.	H	11	n	
	()	eminir	ie)				
	he	1-nd-1	l- po-Ø-i V-i	'(she) ously)			tinu-
1 he	1-nd-i	pa-9-1	V-i(ya)(-se) hel-n	d-a p	-y-a V-	a(-sî)~
					d-yű j	00-10-yū	V-yū(sī)
8	n	11	V-1ë		n	#	v-yū
3	"	п	V-1		n	n	n
	,	-1a-	-i pə-Ø-i V-i	'(she)	used ly) ho	to (co	nti-
1 10	1-1d-1	pa-9-1	V-1(ya)(-sö	i) jal-1	d-a ;	y-y-a	V-a(-sī)~
				Jol-10		рэ-Ф-уй	v-yû(sî)
5	п	"	V-1ë	n			V-yũ
8	"		V-1	"		"	

Mar-Id-i pa-Ø-i V-i '(she) used to (continuously) kill, etc.

1 mar-īd-i pa-Ø-i V-i(ya)(sē) mar-īd-a p-y-a V-a(-sī) ~

mar-Îd-yû pa-Ø-Yû V-yû(sî)

2 " " V-1ë " " V-yū

3 " " V-1 " " " "

From First Causal:

hal-a-id-o p-y-o V-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) used to get (someone)(continuous))
moved'

hel-a-īd-i pa-Ø-i V-i (f. ") '(she) used to get (someone)(continu-ously) moved'

From Second Causal:

hal-a-ra-id-o p-y-o V-o (m.3 Sg.) '(he) used to cause (one) to get (someone) (continuously) moved'

hal-a-ra-id-i pa-#-i V-i (f. ") '(she) used to cause (one) to get (someone) (continuously) moved'

From Passive:

hal-a-"d-o p-y-o V-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) was used to be (continuously) moved'

hel-a-"d-i pe-%-i V-i (f. ") '(she) was used to be (continuously)moved'

From Causal passive:

hal-a-ra-Ø-d-o p-y-o V-o (m.3 Sg.)'(he) was used to be (continuously) got moved'

hal-a-ra-#-d-i pa-#-i V-i (f. ") '(She)was used to be (continuously)got moved'

11.15 Past Continuous-1 :

Pormula: Past + te (aux.) = Past Continuous-1.

when the auxiliary -te is combined with the past form, the complex construction gives the meaning of Past Continuous-1. The auxiliary remains unchanged in all the persons, numbers and genders.

11.15.1 Intransitive formations:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o te '(he) was (just) moving, etc.'

Sg. Pl.

1 hel-y-o (se) te hel-y-a (-si) t-e

2 hol-0-e " hol-y-a "

3 hal-y-o " hal-y-a "

(Feminine)

hala-Ø-i te '(she) was (just) moving etc.,'

1 hələ-Ø-i (ya)-(sē) te həl-y-a (-sī) - te hələ-Ø-yū (-sī)

2 hala-Ø-ie " hala-Ø-yū

8 hala-0-i " " "

From Passive:

hol-a-n-u te

'(it) was being (just)moved'

From Causal passive:

hal-a-ra-Ø-n-u te (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) was being caused to be (just) got moved'

hal-a-ra-p-n-i te (f. ") '(she) was being caused to be (just) got moved'

11.15.2 Transitive formations:

11.15.2.1 Subjective formations:
(i.e. Verb agrees with subject)

From Simple V-stems:

jel-e te 'he was (just)holding, etc.'

Sg. Pl.

1 (au) jel-y-o te (esi) jel-y-a (si) te (m.f.)

jel-y-o(se) "

jele-\$-1(ya)-(se)te jele-\$-yu (-si) "
(f)

2 (tu/to)jol-#-e t e (si) jol- y- a "

3 (u/Un) jal-Ø-e te (u/Uni) " "

From First Causal:

jol-a-Ø-ē te (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was (just) causing to hold.'

From Second Causal:

jel-a-ra-e te (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was (just) causing (one) to get (some one) held'

11.15.2 Objective formations: (Verb agrees with object.only first person Singular).

From Simple V-stems:

Subject	Object		Verb		
mű	kUto	(m. Sg.)	Jol-y-o	te	'I was (just) holding a dog.
	kUta	(m.Pl.)	Jel-y-a	**	'I was (just) holding the dogs.'
"	kUti	(f. Sg)	J>1>-Ø-1	n	'I was (just) holding a bitch!
	kUtyũ	(f. Pl)	jele-Ø-yū	n	'I was (just) holding the bitches.'

From First Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-y-o te 'I was (just) causing to hold a dog '
kUti jel-a-Ø-i te 'I was (just) causing to hold a bitch'

From Second Causal:

mu kUtb jal-a-ra-y-o te ' I was (just) causing to get a dog held'
mu kUti jal-a-ra-Ø-i te ' I was (just) causing to get bitch held'

11.16 Past-Continuous-2:

Formula: Past + p-ye (aux.) = Past continuous-2.

The past continuous-2 is formed by combining the past form with the auxiliary p-ye (expressing conti-

nuity). The auxiliary has unchanged form in all the persons, number and the genders. These categories are expressed by the primary verb.

11.16.1 Intransitive formations:

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o p-ye '(he) was moving, etc.,'

<u>Sg.</u>

1 həl-y-o (-sē) p-ye həl-y-a (sī) p-ye
2 həl-y-e " həl-y-a "
3 həl-y-o " " "

(Feminine)

hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-1 p-ye '(she) was moving, etc.'

1 hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-1(ya)(s\tilde{e}) p-ye hal-y-a (-s\tilde{1}) p-ye hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-y\tilde{u}(s\tilde{1}) "

2 hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-1\tilde{e} " hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-y\tilde{u}(s\tilde{1}) "

3 hala-\$\mathcal{p}\$-1 " " "

From Passive:

hal-an-u p-ye '(it) was being moved.'

From Causal Passive:

hal-a-ra-Ø-n-u p-ye (m.3 Sg) '(he) was being caused to be got moved'

hal-a-ra-Ø-n-i p-ye (f. ") '(she) was being caused to be got moved'

11.16.2 Transitive formations:

11.16.2.1 Subjective formations:
(Verb agrees with subject)

From Simple V-stems:

jal-e p-ye '(he) was holding, etc.,'

Sg. Pl.

1 (au) jel-y-o p-ye (esi) jel-y-a(si) p-ye

jal-y-o(-se) "
(m)

jele-#-1 (ya) (ső) " jele-#-yű (ší) " (f)

2 (tu/to) jel-p-e p-ye (ei) jel-y-a p-ye

8 (u/Un) jol-9-8 " (u/Un1)+ " "

From First Causal:

jal-a-p-e p-ye - (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was causing to hold'

From Second Causal:

jal-a-ra-#-e p-ye (8 Sg.) '(he/she) was causing (one) to get(someone) held'

11.16.2.2 Objective formations: (Verb agrees with object)

From Simple V-stems:

Sub. Obj. Verb.

mu kUto (m. Sg) jol-y-o p-ye 'I was holding a dog'

" kUta (m. Pl) jol-y-a " 'I was holding the degs'

" kUti (f. sg) jele-Ø-1 " 'I was holding a bitch'

" kUt-yū (f.Pl) jala-Ø-yū " 'I was holding the bitches.'

From First Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-y-o p-ye (Obj.m.Sg) ' I was causing to hold a dog '

mu kuti jol-a-Ø-i p-ye (Obj.f.Sg) 'I was causing to hold a bitch'

From Second Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-ra-y-o p-ye (Obj.m.Sg) ' I was causing to get a dog held'

mu kUti jel-a-ra-#-i p-ye (Obj.f.Sg) ' I was causing to get a bitch held'

11.17 Past Continuous-3

Formula: Past + Ve-the (aux.) = Past Continuous-3.

when the past form is combined with the auxiliaryes ve-the, expressing continuity of long time, the complex construction functions as past cont. 3.

Like other past continuous constructions, in this construction also the auxiliary remains unchanged in all the persons, numbers and the genders.

11.17.1 Intransitive Formations:

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o Ve-the '(he)was moving (for long time)

 $\frac{Sg}{1}$.

1 hal-y-o (-se) Ve-the hal-y-a(-si) Ve-the 2 hal-y-e " hal-y-a "

(Feminine)

hala-#-i Ve-the '(she)was moving (for long time) etc-.'

Se.

P1.

1 hala-\$-1 (ya)(-se) Ve-the hal-y-a(si) -Ve-the hala-\$-\$\text{hala-\$\psi_0\$-\$\text{yi}(si)}\$
2 hala-\$-1e " hala-\$\psi_0\$-yuton "

3 hala-\$\psi_0\$-1 " " " "

From Passive:

hal-a- n-u Ve-the (it) was being moved (for long time)

From Causal Passive:

hal-a-ra-n-u Ve-the (m.S Sg.) '(he) was being caused to be got moved (for long time)'

hal-a-ra-n-i Ve-the (f. ") '(she) was being caused to be got moved (for long time)'

11.172 Transitive Formations:

11.17.2.1 Subjective formations:

From Simple V. stems:

jol-e Ve-the '(he) was holding (for long time)'

Se. Pl.

1 (au) jel-y-o Ve-the (esi) jel-y-a(-si) Ve-the jel-y-o (se) "

jel-y-o (se) "

jele-y-i(ye)(se) "

jele-y-i(si) Ve-the

2 (tu/to)jel-2-e " (el) jel-ya "

3 (u/Un) jol-#-@ " (u/Uni) " "

From Pirst Causal:

jol-a-Ø-e Ve-th-e (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was causing to hold'

From Second Causal:

hal-a-ra-2-2 Ve-the (S Sg.) '(he/she) was causing (one) to get (some-one) moved (for -long-time)'

11.17.2.2 Objective Formations:

From Simple V-stems:

Sub. Object. Verb.

mu kUto (m. Sg.) jol-y-o Ve-the 'I was holding a dog. (for long time)'

kUta (m.Pl.) jel-y-a " 'I was holding the dogs (for long time)'

kUti (f. Sg.) jele-g-i " 'I was holding a bitch(for long time)'

kUt yū (f.Pl.)jel-Ø-yū " 'I was holding the bitches (for - long time)'

From First Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-y-o Ve-tht (Obj.m.Sg.)'I was causing to hold a dog (for long time.)'

mu kUti jel-a-g-i " ("f") 'I was causing to hold a bitch (for long time)'

From Second Causal:

mu kUto jal-a-ra-y-o Ve-the(Obj.m.Sg)'I was causing (one) to get a dog held (for long time)

mu kUti jol-a-ra-g-i " (" f ") 'I was causing (one) to get a bitch held (for long time)'

11.18 Past Dubious:

Formula: Past + hu-d-(aux.FP of /hu/'be)+PNG-4 = Past-Dubious.

The past dubious is formed by combining the past form with the dubious auxiliary hu-"d-, fallowed by any suffix from the set PNG-4. The gender and the number is expressed by both the verbs viz. primary and auxiliary but the person is indicated only by the auxiliary. The additional suffix se and -si are optionally added to the auxiliary.

11.18.1 Intrasitive Pormations:

From Simple V. stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o hu-d-o '(He) might have moved etc., '

Sg.

1 hal-y-o hu-"d-o (-se) hal-y-a hu-"d-a (-si)

2 " hu-"d-e hal-y-a hu-"d-a

3 " hu-"d-o "

(Feminine)

hala-\$\mu_i \text{hu}_i \text{d-i} '(she) might have moved etc.'

1 hala-\$\mu_i \text{hu}_i \text{d-i}(ya)(-se) \text{hal-ya} \text{hu}_i \text{d-a}(-si) - \text{hal-\$\mu_i} \text{yu} \text{hu}_i \text{d-yu} (-si) - \text{n-in}

2 " \text{hu}_i \text{d-i} \text{e} \text{hala-\$\mu_i} \text{yu} \text{hu}_i \text{d-yu}

3 " \text{hu}_i \text{d-i} \text{in} " "

From Passive:

Jol-a-n-u hu-d-o '(he) might have been held'

jol-a-n-i hu-"d-i '(she) might have been held'

From Causal passive:

jol-a-ra-n-u hu-d-o (m. Sg.) '(he) might have been caused to be got held'

jol-a/n-i hu-d-i (f. ") '(she) might have been caused to be got held'

11.18.2 Transitive Formations:

11.18.2.1 Subjective Formations:

From Simple V. stems:

jol-e hu-"d-e '(he) might have held etc.,'

<u>Sp.</u> <u>Pl.</u>

1 (au) jel-y-o hu-d-o (esi) jel-y-a hu-d-a (si)(m.f.)

" hu-d-o(se) jele-y-u hu-d-yu (si)
(m)

jolo-#-i hu-"d-1(ye)(ce)
-n(f)

2 (tu/to) jol-\$-0 hu-d-e jol-y-a hu-d-a

3 jol-p-ë hu-"d-ë " "

From First causal:

jol-a-e hu-"d-e (m. 3 Sg.)'(he) might have caused to hold'

From Second causal:

jel-a-ra-c hu-d-c (m.3 Sg.)'(he) might have caused (one) to get (someone) held'

11.18.2.2 Objective Formation:

From Simple V-stems:

Sub. Obj. Verb.

mu kUto (m.Sg) jel-y-o hu-d-o ' I might have held a dog'

kUta (m.Pl) jel-y-a hu-"d-a ' I might have held the dogs'

kUti (f. Sg) jele-Ø-i hu-d-i 'I might have held a bitch'

kUtyū (f.Pl) jala-Ø-yū hu-d-yū''I might have held the bitches'

From First Causal:

mu kUto jal-a-y-o hu-"d-o (Obj. m. Sg.)'I might have caused to hold a dog'

mu kUti jel-a# -i hu-"d-i (Obj. f.Sg.)'I might have caused to hold a bitch'

From Second Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-re-y-o hu-"d-o(Obj.m.Sg) ' I might have caused (one) to get a dog held'

mu kUti jel-a-ra-p-i hu-"d-i(Obj.f.Sg) ' I might have caused (one) to get a bitch - held'

11.19 Past Subjunctive:

Pormula: Past + V-(aux.)+PNM-3(Int.)= Past Subjunctive.

The Past Subjunctive is formed by combining the past form with the subjunctive auxiliary V- PNG-3 -

(Int.). The number and the person is expressed by both the verbs viz. primary (in past form) and auxiliary. The gender is expressed by the primary verb except in the second and third person of the transitive formation in which the gender distinction is not observed.

The additional suffixes -se and -si are not used in this construction.

11.19.1 The intransitive formations:

Prom Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o V-S '(he) may have moved, etc.'

Sr.			- Marian I	12.
1	hal-y-o	v-ã	hol-y-a	V-0
2	hal-y-o	V-ē	hol-y-a	V-o
9	hal-v-n	V=0	hal-v-n	V-0

(Feminine)

hələ-\$-1 V-3 '(she) may have moved, etc.'

1 hələ-\$-1 V-\$\text{a}\$ hələ-\$-\text{y}\text{u}\$ "

2 hələ-\$-1 V-\$\text{e}\$ hələ-\$\text{\$\sigma}\$-\text{y}\text{u}\$ V-\$\text{o}\$.

8 holo-Ø-1 V-8 " V-8

From Passive:

Jol-a-n-u V-S (m. S Sg.) '(he) may have been held'

jel-a-n-1 V-3 (f. ") (she) may have been held

From Causal Passive:

jol-a-ra-Ø-n-u V-3 (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) may have been caused to be got held'

jel-a-ra-6-n-i V-3 (f. ") '(she) may have been caused to be got held.'

11.19.2 Transitive Constructions:

11.19.2.1 Subjective formations:

From Simple V-stems:

Jol-e V-3 '(he) may have held etc., '

Se. Pl.

1 jel-y-o V-a jel-y-a V-o (m.f.)

jələ-Ø-1 V-ā jələ-Ø-yū V-ō
(f)

2 jal-e V-a Jal-y-a V-a

3 jol-ë v-3 " v-ë

Prom First Causal

jol-a-e V-3 (m. 3 Sg) '(he/she) may have caused to hold'

From Second Causal:

jol-a-ra-e V-3 (m. 3 Sg)'(he/she) may have caused (one) to get (some one) held'

11.20 Perfect Present:

Formula: Past + a-(aux.) + PAM-S(tr)=Perfect Present.

The auxiliary, 9-, followed by the suffix from set PNM-3 (tr.), expresses present tense. The past from gives the meaning of perfect when it occurs along with anytemporal auxiliary. Thus when past form is combined with the auxiliary 9- (expressing present tense), the complex construction gives the meaning of Perfect Present. The person category is expressed by the auxiliary, the gender is distinguished by the primary and the number is observed by both the verbs, viz. primary and auxiliary.

11.20.1 Intransitive Formations:

From Simple V-stems

(Mesculine)

hal-y-o a-y '(he) has moved, etc., '

<u>Sg.</u>

l hol-y-o s-iyā .hol-y-a s-yū

2 " s-iyē " s-ys

3 " s-y " s--

(Feminine)

hala-#-i a-y '(she) has moved, etc.,'

1 hala-Ø-1 a-iya hol-y-a o-yu

hala-Ø-yu "

o-iye 9-90

9-1 a-y

Prom Passive!

jel-a-n-u a-y (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) has been held'.

jal-a-n-i a-y (f. ") '(she) has been held'

From Causal Passive:

hal-gra-f-n-ua-ym. 3 Sg.) '(he) has been caused to be got held'.

hol-a-ra-#-n-i a-y (f. ") '(she) has been caused to be got held'

11.20.2 Transitive Constructions:

11.20.2.1 Subjective formations:

From Simple V-stems:

Sg.

jel-e a-e

'(he) has held, etc., t

P1.

jol-y-a o-yu -1 Jol-y-o o-iya (m)

(m.f)

jele-Ø-yu e-yu Jola-0-1 (2)

jol-y-a 2 jol 9-0 色**色

3 jol-%-e a-e

From First Causal:

jel-a-Ø-ē a-ē (8 Sg.) '(he/she) has caused to hold'

From Second Causal:

jel-a-ra-e a-)e (3 Sg.) '(he/she) has caused (one) to get (someone) held'.

11.20.2.2 Objective Formations:

Sub. Obj. Verb.

mu kUto (m.Sg) jel-y-o a-y 'I have held a dog'
kUta ("Pl) jel-y-a e-i 'I have held the dogs'
kUti (f.Sg) jele-Ø-i a-y 'I have held a bitch'
kUt-yū("Pl) jele-Ø-yū e-i 'I have held the bitches.

11.21 Perfect Past:

Formula: Past + V-(aux.) + PNM-4 = Perfect Past.

The auxiliary V- followed by the suffix from the set PNM-4, expresspast tense. The past form being occurred with a temporal auxiliary (V- + PNM-4) functions as the perfect. Thus the whole complex construction functions as perfect past. The person category is expressed by auxiliary the gender category is distinguished by primary and the number by both viz. primary and auxiliary.

11.21.1 Intransitive Formations:

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o V-o '(he) had moved, etc., '

Sg. Pl. Pl.

1 hal-y-o V-o (se) hal-y-a V-a-(si)

2 " V-e " V-a

1 1 V-0 11 11

(Feminine)

hala-\$-1 V-1 '(she) had moved, etc., '

1 hələ-Ø-i V-i(ya)(-se) həl-y-a V-a (si) hələ-y-u V-yu (si)

9 " V-16 " V-yū

8 " V-1 " V-yū

From Passive:

jol-a-n-u V-o (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) had been held'

jol-a-n-1 V-1 (f ") (she) had been held'

From Causal Passive:

jol-a-ra-n-u V-o (m. 3 Sg.)

'(he) had been caused to be got

held*

jal-a-ra-n-i V-i (f. ")

'(she) had been caused to be got held'

11.21.2 Transitive Formations:

11.21.2.1 Subjective formation:

From Simple V-stems:

191-0 V-0

'(he) had held, etc.'

P1. V-0 V-a (si) 1 191-y-0 jol-y-a (m.f) (m.f.) V-0(se) V-1(ya)(sð Jolo-9-yu 1-1-9-1 (4) V-0 Jol-y-a V-a 2 jal-p-e V-0 3 101-0-0

From: First Causal:

jol-a-e V-e (3 Sg.) '(he/she) had caused to hold'

From Second Causal:

jol-a-ra-e V-e (3 Sg.) '(he/she) had caused (one) to get (some one) held'

11.21.2.2 Objective Formations:

Sub Obj. Verb.

mu kUto (m.Sg) jel-y-o V-o 'I had held a dog'
kUta (m.Pl) jel-y-a V-a ' " the dogs'
kUti (f.Sg) jele-∮-i V-i ' " a bitch'
kUtyū (f.Pl) jele-∮-yū V-yū ' " the bitches'

11.22 Past-Durative-1

Formula: Past-Cont.2 + to (aux) = Past Durative-1

The Past Durative is formed by combining the past-continuous-2 (past + p-ye aux.) and the auxiliary -te. The whole construction is extended complex which functions as the past durative-1.

The auxiliary p-ye and te have unchanged forms, in all the persons, numbers and genders. The person, number and gender categories are expressed by the - primary verb.

11.22.1 Intransitive formations:

From Simple V-stems:

(Mesculine)

hel-y-o p.ye te' (he) was(continuously) moving, etc.,'

26.

1 həl-y-o (-sē) p-ye te həl-y-a(sī) p-ye te

2 həl-y-e " " həl-y-a " "

3 həl-y-o " " " " " "

(Feminine)

1 hələ-∮-iĕ " " hələ-∮-yū " "

2 hələ-∮-iĕ " " hələ-∮-yū " "

From Passive:

jel-a n-u p-ye te (m. 8 Sg.) '(he) was being (continuously) held'

jol-a-n-i p-ye te (f. ") '(she) was being (continuously) held'

From Causal Passive:

jol-a-ra-Ø-n-u p-ye te (m. 3 Sg.) '(he) was being caused to be (continuously) got

jol-a-ra-Ø-n-i p-ye te (f. ") '(she) was being caused to be (continuously) got held'

11.22.2 Transitive Formations:

11.22.2.1 Subjective Formations:

From Simple V-stems:

jol-e p-ye te '(he) was (continuously)

Sg. Pl.

1 (au) jel-y-o p-ye te (sel) jel-y-a(sl) p-ye te (m.f.) (m.f.)

(m) jolo-Ø-1(ya) (se) " jolo-Ø-yū(si)p-ye te

2 (ta/to) jel-p-e " (el) jel-y-a p-ye te

3 (u/Un) jol-%-e " (u/Uni) " "

From First Causal:

jal-a-Ø-e p-ye to (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was (continuously) causing to

From Second Causal:

jel-a-ra-Ø-e p-ye te (3 Sg.) '(he/she) was (continuously) causing (one) to get (some one) held.'

11.22.2.2 Objective formations:

From Simple V-stems:

Sub.	Ob.1.		Verb:		
mũ	kUto	(m. Sg)	Jol-y-0	p-ye to	'I was (continu- ously) holding a dog '
,	kUta	(m.P1)	jol-y-a	p-ye te	'I was (continu ously) holding the dogs'
ti	kUti	(m. Sg)	jolo-ø-ni		'I was (continu- ously) holding a bitch'
n	kUtyű	(f.P1)	J=1>-Ø-yū	u	'I was (continu- ously) holding the bitches'

From First Causal:

mu kUto jelra-y-o p-ye te (Obj.m.Sg)'I was causing to (continuously) hold a dog.'

mu kUti jala-#-i p-ye te (Obj.F.Sg)'I was causing to (continuously) hold a bitch.

From Second Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-ra-yo p-ye te (Obj.m.Sg.)' I was causing (one) to (continuously) get a dog held'

mu kUti jel-a-ra-Ø-i p-ye te (Obj.F.Sg) 'I was causing (one) to continuously) get a bitch held'

11.23 Past Durative-2

Pormula: Past Cont. 3 + to (aux) = Past Durative-2

The Past Durative is formed by combining the past continuous-3 (Past + Ve-the aux.) with the auxi - liary-te-. The whole construction six is extended - complex which functions as past durative-2.

The auxiliaries Ve-the and -te have unchanged forms in all the persons, numbers and the genders. All these grammatical categories viz. the person, gender - and number are expressed by the primary verb.

11.23.1 Intransitive formations:

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

hal-y-o Ve-the te '(he) was (continuously) moving (for long time)etc.'

 $\frac{Sg}{s}$.

1 hal-y-o(se) Ve-the te hal-y-a(sī) Ve-the te 2 hal-y-e " " hal-y-a " " 8 hal-y-o " " " " " " " "

(feminine)

hele-Ø-i Ve-th te '(she) was (continuously) moving (for long time)

Sg. Pl.

l hələ-Ø-i (ya)se Ve-the te həl-y-a(sī) Ve-the te ~ hələ-Ø-yū (sī) " "

2 hələ-Ø-ie " " hələ-Ø-yū " "

3 holo-ø-i n n n n n

From Passive:

jol-a-n-u Ve-the te (m. 3 Sg.)'(he) was being (continuously)held (for long time)'

jol-a-n-i Ve-the te (f. ")'(she) was being (continuously) held (for long time)'

Causal Passive:

jal-a-ra-Ø-n-u Ve-the te (he) was being caused to be (continuously) got held (for long time)

jal-a-ra-Ø-n-i Ve-the te '(she) was being caused to be (continuously) got held (for long time)

11.23.2 Transitive Formations

11.28.2.1 Subjective fermations:

From Simple V-stems:

jel-e Ve-the te '(he) was (continuously) holding (for long time)'

	Sg.			Pl	l.		
1 au jel-7	(2)	Vo-the	a to	(1se)	jol-ya-s (m.f		e te
	(-o(sē)		n		jele-Ø-y (2)	ŭ(sĩ) "	**
jala-	Ø-1 (ya)) (s ē) "	"		919 -#- yũ (f)	(sī) "	"
2 tu/to ja	1-7-0	п	- 11		7-1-y-a	**	11
3 u/Un ja	1-Ø-ë	•	n			n	н
From First	Causal	Li		K. K.			
j∍1-a-ō 1	Ve-the 1	te (:	8 Sg.		(he/she) to (conti- hold (for	nuously)
From Secon	d Cause	12:					
jol-a-ra-	Vo-the	e te (3 Sg.		(he/she) (one) to ously) ge held (for	(continu	u- one)
11,23,2,2	Object	ive Forma	tions	1			
From Simpl	le V-st	ems:					
Sub. Ob.1.		Verb.					
mũ kUto	(m. Sg)	Jol-y-0	Ve	the te	ously	(conti	ng
kUta	(m, P1)	jol-y-a		•	' I was ously the d	(continuogs'(fortime)	nu-
kUt1	(f,Sg)	jolo-Ø-1		"	ously a bit	(continue) holding	g
kütyű	(f.F1)	Jələ-Ø-yi	ī		ously the b	(continue) time)	2

Prom First Causal:

mu kUto jel-a-y-o Ve-the te (Obj.m.Sg)'I was causing to (continu-ously) hold a dog (for - long time)

mu kUti jala-0-1 Ve-the te (Obj.f. Sg)'I was causing to (continuously) hold a bitch (for - long time)'

From Second Causal:

mu kUto jol -a-ra-y-o Ve-the te (Obj.m.Sg)

'I was causing (One) to (continuously) get a dog held (for long time)*

mi kUti jel-a-ra-Ø-i Ve-the te (Obj.f.Sg)'I was causing (one) to (continuously) get a bitch held - (for long time)'

CHAPTER

12

COMPOUND PASSIVE

12.1 Formation:

The compound passive is formed by combining past participle of transitive verb with the auxiliary /vIn/ 'go'. It is conjugated in all the moods and tenses. The examples of Simple moods and tenses are given below:

From Simple V-stems:

From first causal:

From second causal:

mar-a-ra-y-o) (m.2 Sg)'be (you)caused to be got killed'
mar-a-ra-Ø-i) (f. ") "

12.3 <u>Future Imperative</u>:

From Simple V-stems:

mar-y-o Ve-j 'be(you)killed (hereafter)

From First Causal:

mar-a-y-o) (m. 2 Sg) 'be (you) caused to be killed (hereafter)' mar-a-p-i) (f. ") "

From Second Causal:

mar-a-ra-y-o) (m.2Sg) 'be(you) caused to be got killed (hereafter)' war-a-ra-Ø-i) (f. ") 'be (you)caused to be got killed (hereafter)'

12. 4 Subjunctive:

From Simple V-stems:

mar-y-o vIn-3 '(he) may be killed'

From First Causal:

mar-a-y-o) (m.38g) '(he) may be caused to be killed' mar-a-Ø-i) '(f. ") '(she) "

From Second Causal:

mar-a-ra-y-o) (m.3 Sg) '(he) may be caused to be got killed'
mar-a-ra-y-i) (f. ") "

12.5 Future:

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

mar-y-o Ve-"d-o '(he) will be killed etc.'

(Feminine)

From Simple V-stem:

From First Causal:

mar-a-y-o Ve-"d-o (m. 3 Sg) (he) will be caused to be killed'
mar-a-Ø-i Ve-"d-i (f. ") " "

From Second Causal:

mar-a-ra-y-o Ve-d-o (m.3 Sg) '(he)will be caused to be got killed'

mar-a-ra-p-i Ve-"d-i (f. ") '(she) will be caused to be got killed'

12.6 Past

From Simple V-stems:

(Masculine)

mar-y-o V-y-o '(he) was killed, etc., '

(Feminine)

From First Causal:

mar-a-y-o V-y-o (m.3 Sg) (h) was caused to be killed' mar-a-p-i Va-p-i (f. ") (she) " "

From Second Causal:

mar-a-ra-y-o V-y-o (m.3 Sg) (he) was caused to be got killed' mar-a-ra-Ø-i V2-Ø-i (f. ") (she) "

CHAPTER

18

COMPOUND VERB

13.1 Description of Compound Verb:

Compound Verb is a formation which consists of two primary V-stems plus or minus an auxiliary. It is different from the simple and the complex verbs as the former contains only one primary V-stem and the latter consists of one primary V-stem plus one or more auxiliaries, e.g.,

- (1) hi hal-nd-o (Simple) 'he will move'
- (ii) hi hel-nd-o ay (Complex) he uses to move!
- (iii) hi hel-nd-o ro-d-o (Com- he will continu-

(Lit. he will remain in moving)

13.2 'Operator' and 'Operated'

Every Compound Verb has two primary <u>V-s</u>tems.

The second V-stem is 'operator' which operates the formation. The first V-stem is 'operated'.

13.3 Types of Compound Verb:

The main types of Compound Verb are two. For the sake of convenience, we call them type (A) and

type (B). The main difference between these two types is this, that in the compounds of (A) type, only operator contains the personal suffix. The operated has no personal suffix. But in the compound of (B) type, both the stems contain personal suffixes.

Type (A)

bej-i Vyo 'he ran away'

(Lit. (after) having run (he) went)

bej-1 Vya 'they ran away'

(Lit. (after) having rung (they)

went)

Type (B)

hal-nd-o Ve- do 'he will continuously move' (Lit. he will go by moving)

hal-nd-a Ve-"d-a 'they will continuously move' (Lit. they will go by moving.)

There are two kinds of (A) Compounds:

- (1) In which the first stem is past conjunctive.
- (ii) In which the first stem is infinitive.

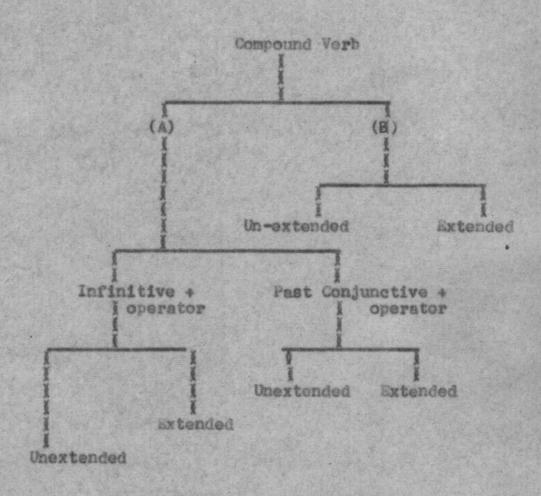
In the (B) Compounds, the 'operated 'element is always future participle.

Every Compound can enter into the Construction with auxiliaries and gives rise to the 'Extended Compound'.

The formation of extended compound is parallel to that -

of extended complex i.e. compound * auxiliary = extended Compound; Complex * auxiliary = extended complex.

The following graph shows all kinds of Com-



13.4 Formation of Compound verbs

13.4.1 (A) Compounds.

(a) Past Conjunctive + operator

chokro baj-i v-y-o 'a boy ran away'
(Lit. (after) having run
a boy went away)

baj-1 v-y-a ' the boys ran away' chokra (Lit. (after) having run the boys went away) ' a girl ran away ' chokri baj-1 va-0-1 (Lit. (efter) having run a girl went away) (b) Past Conjunctive + operator + auxiliary chokro baj-i V-y-o ay ' a boy has run away ' (Lit. (after) having run a boy has gone away) ' the boys have run away chokra boj-i V-y-a oi (Lit. (after) having run the boys have gone away) chokri boj-1-Vo-2-1 ay ' a girl has run away ' (Lit. (after) having run a girl has gone away) (e) Infinitive + operator chokro hal-an lag-o ' a boy began to move' ' the boys began to move' chokra hol-on log-a chokr1 hal-an lag-i ' a girl began to move ' (d) Indefinitive + operator + auxiliary hal-an lag-o Vo ' a boy had begun to move' chokro

hal-an lag-a V-a ' the boys had begun to move'

hal-an lag-i V-i ' a girl had begun to move '

ehokra

chokri

18.4.2 (B) Compounds

(a) Puture participle + operator.

chokro hal-nd-o Ve-d-o 'a boy will continuously move'

(Lit. a boy will go by moving)

chokra hel-nd-a- Ve-d-a ' the boys will continu-

(Lit. the boys will go by

moving)

chokri hal-nd-i Ve-di 'a girl will continu-

ously move'

(Lit. a girl will go by

moving)

(b) Future participle + operator + auxiliary

chokro hal-nd-o Ve-d-o V-o 'a boy was continuously moving'
(Lit. a boy used to go

by moving)

chokra hal-nd-a Ve-d-a V-a ' the boys were continuously moving'

(Lit. the boys used to go

by moving)

chokri hal-nd-i Ve-d-i V-i 'a girl was continuously moving'

(Lit. a girl used to go by moving)

13.5 Conjugation of Compound Verb:

The past-conjunctive as an 'operated' remains unalterable. The infinitive either occurs in unalterable oblique form or takes the suffixes indicating number and gender. The future participle always occurs with the

suffixes from set Gk-6. The operator is conjugated in simple and complex moods and tenses. The conjugation of operators is like simple Verbs. The examples of one type (Fast conjunctive + operator) is all the simple moods and tenses are given below:

Imperative

bej-1 VIn (Com- 'you run away 'pound)

(Lit. (after) having run (you) go away)

Future Imperative

baj-aj (Simple) 'you run away'
(hereafter)

baj-i VIn-aj (Com- 'you run away'
pound) (hereafter)

(Lit. (after) having run
(You, hereafter) go
away)

Subjunctive

bej-a (Simple) 'I may run away'

bej-i VIn - a (com- 'I may run away '

pound) (Lit. (after) having

run I may go away)

Future

bej-nd-o (se) (Simple) ' I shall run away '

bəj-i Ve-"d-o (se) (Compound)

(Lit. (after) having
run I shall go away.

Past

baj-y-o (se) (Simple) 'I ran away '
baj-1 V-y-o (se) (Compound) (Lit. (after) having
run I went away)

Note: /VIn/ 'go' has alloworph Ve - in future and V- in past.

李安安在安安安

CHAPTER

14

POST POSITION

14.1 Description:

or noun-phrase and shows its relationship with any other form in a sentence, is called post position, e.g.

1 ram thi Copri gln

' take a book from Rama

2 au hun ke ca to

' I say to him/her '

3 go je mathe te sin al

' there are horns on the head of cow '

14.2 Classification:

Like the adverbs, the postpositions are also classified (i) according to their nature, (ii) according to their formation and (iii) according to their declension.

14.2.1 Rasic and positional

The postpositions are either basic or positional. The basic post positions are those which are bound forms and always occur after a noun or nominal phrase. The post positions which have been illustrated in the above mentioned sentences, are the examples of basic postpositions. The positional post positions are those free forms, which primarly belong to other form classes. They occupy the position of post-position and functions like it. e.g.

1 mathe VIn (adv) 'go up'
gore mathe Ve (Post- 'sit on the horse'
position)

2 13ro sī tēri mīni (adj) 'a lion (is) like a cat' sī 13ro ker ay (post- 'who is like a lion?'

3 hi taraph khaso sy(Subs) ' this side is good'
mu taraphac (postposition) ' come towards me '

It is possible that two post-positions may occur together. Thus the possible occurrences of the post-positions will be as follows:

- (a) One basic post position

 ram lo gor ' the house of Nama'
- (b) one positional post-position

 gore mathe Ve 'sit on the horse'
- (c) Two basic post positions

 gore je vaste ga an ' bring grass for the borse'
- (d) one basic and one positional postposition gore je tereph vin ' go towards the horse'

14.2.2 Simple and composite

positions are of two types, Simple and Composite. The Simple postposition consists of Single morpheme, e.g.,

thi 'from', ke 'to', Vigor 'without'.

The composite postpositions consist of more than one morphemes, e.g.

mInj 'inside', mInj-a 'from inside' mInj-ara ' to inside '

ger mInj maru ay the person is inside the house'

ger minia maru sed to the person comes from-

gar mInj-a ra maru Vind to 'the person goes to inside the house'

14.2.3 Declinable and indeclinable:

positions are either declinable or indeclinable. Except jo 'of', all other basic post-positions are indeclinable - nable. All the declinable postpositions other than jo 'of' are positional. Basically, they are -o ending - declinable adjectives.

14.3 <u>Inflection</u>:

Following are the inflectional suffixes which are added to the declinable postposition jo 'of'

Mas.		Fem.		
Se.	<u>P1</u> .	Se.	<u>P1</u> .	
-0 -0	-a 1	-1	-ũ	
-a	-a !	1-1	-ũ	
-0	-5- 1	ļ -i	-6-	
	e i	1	-i -e	
	<u>Sg.</u> -0 -a	Sg. P1.	Sg. Pl. Sg. -0 -a -1 -a -a -1 -e -5- -1	

It is necessary to mention that 'jo'of' is declined according to the following noun and not according to the preceding noun. The examples of the occurrence of jo 'of' along with the nouns are given below:

	Mes.	
	ram 10 goro	' a horse of Rama, etc.,
	Se.	<u>P1</u> .
Nom	rem j-o goro	ram J-a gor-a
Voc	ram j-a gor-a	ram j-a gor-a
Ob1.	ram j-e gor-e	ram j-ē) gor-ē -
		J-e)

Fem.

ram ji gori

' a mare of Rama etc., '

Sg.

Nom. ram ji gori

Voc. ram j-i gori

Ob. ram j-1 gori

ram jy-û gory-û ram jy-û gory-û ram j-ê-) gorî-ê

ji ;

when we compare the inflected forms of postposition jo 'of', with the -o ending declinable adjectives, we find that all the forms, except Obl.Pl.
are identical. In the odjective there is no optional
suffix in Mas. Obl.Pl. but in jo 'of' there is option
to use Obl.Sg. Suffix in place of Obl.Pl.(e~e).Similarly
in the feminine Obl. Pl. of the adjectives, there is
option to use Obl.Sg. in place of Obl.Pl. but in the feminine Obl.Pl. of jo 'of' there is option to use any
one from three suffixes, obl.pl. (-e common for mas.
and fem). Mas. Obl.Sg.(-e) fem.Obl.= Sg.(-i)

14.4 Combination of two post positions:

Post of the positional post-positions can occur along with the postposition je or ji (the oblique form of jo 'of'). Je or ji is decided by the preceding noun. Je can be used for both masculine and

feminine but ji is optionally used with feminine nouns only, e.g.,

raja je khater (Mas.) 'for the king'
rani je khater) (Fem.) 'for the queen'
rani ji khater)

There are some post positions which necessarily follow the post position je, while there are some others which optionally follow the postposition je.

Both kinds of post positions are given below:

14.5 The post-positions necessarly occurring after je ' of '.

(je) badle 'in exchange'
rubru 'before'
odo 'near'
capher 'around'
barobar 'like'
vas 'in control'
arpar 'through'

14.6 The post positions, optionally occurring

'near'

(je) egiya 'infront' pUthiya 'in back'

aspas

after je 'of ' .

'under' heth (je) hetha 'from the bottom' nice 'under' 'after' pos 'about' babat rite 'in manner' 'inside' ander 'without' viger 'without' vIna 'for' vaste 'according to ' promane 'towards' taraph 'for ' khator mate 'for' *by * dvara 'care of' marphot ion i mo the mo tha 'on, fom above ' hethera 'to bottom' ado 'before' "from" bora 'near' pase 'in case' karan

same

'in front'

CHAPTER

15

ADVERB

15.1 Description:

A linguistic form, which modifies the verb or verbal phrase by expressing time, place etc. of the - action, is called an adverb. e.g.,

hene vin kida vin-e to 'now, move'.,

' where do you go '

15.2 Classification:

The adverbs are classified on the basis of different criteria which are as follows:

- (1) From the point of view of nature.
- (11) From the point of view of formation.
- (111) From the point of view of inflection.

15.2.1 Basic and positional

The adverbs, from the point of view of the nature, are of two types: the basic and the positional.

The basic adverbs are those which irrespective to their syntactical position, are always used as the adverbs, e.g. hape 'now' kadae 'may'

originally belong to other form classes but occurring at the position of basic adverbs, modify the verb or verbal phrase, e.g.,

1 hi marg <u>vako</u> ay (adj) 'this road is <u>zigzag'</u> (adjective)

sep vako hels to (adv) the snake moves zigzag (adverb)

2 hi gar ay (subs) ' it is a house '

15.2.2 Simple, complex and Compound:

From the point of view of the formation, the adverbs are simple, complex, and compound. The simple adverbs consist of single morpheme, e.g.,

of 'to-day' kedae ' may' hane 'now'

The composite adverbs consist of more than one morphemes. The composite adverbs may be complex, con - taining at least one bound morpheme, or they may be - compound, containing all the free morphemes, e.g.,

h-Ite here

Complex

k-lte Whore

j-Ite which place

t-Ite that place

Compound

ek-dem 'within a moment, immediately'

(ek 'one' dam 'moment')

hiya-hiya 'very fast'

(heya- 'fast')

Uge-Ule ' for whole time, for ever'

(Uge 'dawn' Ule 'dust')

15.2.3 Declinable and indeclinable:

the adverbs are either indeclinable or declinable. All the basic adverbs are indeclinable. Only the positional adverbs, which are originally -o ending declinable - adjectives, are declined. Their declension also is op - tional, i.e. they may be declined according to the number and the gender of the verb. or they may remain undecline ed e.g.,

chokro <u>Vako</u> hald to 'the boy moves <u>ZigZag</u>' chokra <u>Vak-a</u> half ta 'the boys move zigzag' chokri <u>Vak-i</u> half ti 'the girl moves zigzag' chokry-u vaky-u half t-yu 'the girls move zigzag'

OR

chokro <u>Vāk o halā</u> to 'the boy moves zigzag' chokra <u>Vāk o halā</u> t-a 'the boys move zigzag' chokri <u>Vāk o halā</u> t-i 'the girl moves zigzag' chokry-ū <u>Vāko halā</u> t-yū 'the girls move zigzag'

办场市市市市市市市市

CHAPTER

16

CONJUNCTION

16.1 Description:

The indeclinable words which connect words , phrases or sentences, are called conjunctions.

(a) Connecting two words:

'dud minja makhan ane dai bane ta/
' the butter and curd are made from the milk'.

Here the conjunction one 'and' connects two words: / makhan / 'butter', /dai/ 'curd'.

(b) Connecting two phrases:

/bor khaso pen hemet jeruri/

'the strength (is) good but courage (is) necessary'.

Here the Conjunction pan 'but' connects two phrases: /bor khaso/ 'strength good', /hemat jeruri / 'the courage necessary'.

(c) Connecting two sentences:

/hun ke co ke hu dud khani acd/
'tell him that he may bring the milk '.

Here the conjunction ke 'that' connects two

sentences: /hUh ke co/ ' tell him ' /hu dud khani aca/

16.2 Kinds of conjunctions:

The following conjunctions have been observed:

(1)	Compulative:	ene ne	'and'
(11)	Adversative:	pen	'but'
(111)	Disjunctives	ya nIka	'or'
(iv)	Conditional:	je -	1121
(v)	Causal:	karan	'because'
(vi)	Illative:	ta	'then'
(vii)	Final:	ke	'that'

EXAMPLES :

(a) /pUthiya In jo dUsman ayo ne vari vare ke ce ke mu jo všri vatay nika hšri to jo dogo kapi vljndo se /

'after him his enemy came and said to the gardner that he should show him his enemy otherwise he would cut his head'.

(b) /grasiyo cë 10 tu veg ene se koryu metha diyê te au to ko gorî diya /

'The land lord said, 'if you give me the herd plus one hundred koryu (coins) then I shall give you the

mare.

(c) /pUter ta set kedi ne ske vete pUgo ene ce ke Bapa cor bor ta koy nel pen skel/

'The son ren to the wort trees and said that there were no thieves but there were wort trees'.

(d) / i gəjəl ay ya lavni ay Inji khəbər pa ke nay karən ke pa ke ragvidya nəti əcs./

'whether it is a Gazal (a form of poetry)

or Levni (a form of poetry) we do not know because

we have no knowledge of the art of music. '

企业业企业等

CHAPTER

17

INTERJECTION

17.1 Description:

Interjections are those uninflected words which with particular stress, express some feeling or emotion, e.g.

va va !

'well done, good.'

hay hay !

' alas '

hē !

'o ! oh !

17.2 Kinds of interjections:

The interjections are of two types:

- (1) Basic interjections, and
- (ii) Positional interjections.

The basic interjections are those which occur only as interjections and mainly occur in the interjectional positions, e.g.,

ere, hite se

' 0, come here '

bale, au vedose

' Well, I shall go '

The positional interjections are those words which belong to other word classes but are used as interjections e.g.

(a) Substantive:

ram ram ! i kUro thlyo ?
'Oh God ! What this happened ?

(b) Pronoun:

kUro, u ne to ses

(c) Adjective:

belo, su vedo se
'Well, I shall go.'

(d) Verb:

ji, aca pyo
'Yes, I am coming.'

(e) Adverb:

Sacaī, ī ay.

'Wonder, is it so.'

Similarly, certain phrases and sentences can occur in the injectional position, e.g.,

va re mUres va ! heji to ece.
'Bravo ! O brave man, bravo ! you are still coming.!

西海南南南南

APPENDIX-1

SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Burton Page

'Compound and Conjunct verb in Hindi' BECAS, xix / 3 1957.

Ferguson C.A. and bunier Chowdhri.

'Phonemes of Bengali'Language, Baltimore (USA) Vol. 36, pt. 1.

Hocket C.F.

'A course in Modern Linguistics' New-york.

I.M.P. Raside

'The Merathi Compound verb 'Indian linguistics, Turner Vol.

Jetley Murlidher

'Worphology of Sindhi'
Ph. D. Thesis (unpublished)
submitted to the University of
Poons (India).

Jones Daniel

'An out-line of english phonetics'

kellogg

'Grammar of Hindi Language'

Khubehandani L.M.

'The Phonology and Norphophonemics of Sindhi' Thesis (unpublished) submitted to the University of Pensylvania, (USA)

Trumpp Ernest

'Grammar of Sindhi Language'.

由于安徽市

APPENDIX - 2

BIBLIOGRAFHY OF WORKS ON KACHI

Grierson

'Linguistic Survey of India.

Vol. VIII, pt.1

Karani Duleray

'Kachi Kahevato'

11 11

'Kachi Kaladhar pt.1

11 11

" pt.2

es es

'Kach na santo ane Kaviyo pt.1 '

11 11

n pt.2 '

'Vatan ji Vani '

11 21

'Kisa Bavni '

11 1

'Harijan Batrisi

Khubchandani

'Each jun jatyun aen Folyun 'Article in Hindvasi (Sindhi)

Lalji Nanji Joshi

'Kachi hindi '

L.F. Rushbrook

'The Black Hills '

Makbul Kachi

'Kachi Bolen ji Kriya '

Mehta Markanderay!

'Kach ni Bhugol. '

Prabhudas

'Kachi Sabdavali '

Bohra S.K.

CALLED CO.

A series of five articles in

'Swatantra' (Sindhi)

'Folk tales of Kachi '

Shantibhai Acharya

'Segmental phonemes of Machi' an article in 'Vidya'Vol. VII. No.1.

安安在海南南京北部市

CHAPTER

18

TEXTS

In the first five texts, every utterance has been segmented up to the morphemic level and inter linear translation has been given along with free translation of the text. In the remaining ten texts, the segmentation is up to word level and only free translation is given along with the text.

18.1 <u>Text-1</u>.

mula var-o naro

- 1. hIkr-o vakhat hIkr-o mUla gad-e once time one Muslim priest cart(obl.)
 - on having sat somewhere was going (Lit. used to go)
- 2. U-da vat me hlkr-1 nay ac-id-i v-1 there road in one(f.) torrent was coming

3. gado ja-de nay vate pU-g-o ta-de cart when torrent near reached then

kheru c-3 t-o ke hane nar-e ke farmer says that now belt (obl.) to

jera-k tat jel-ija little tight hold.

4. kheru ta U-n ke god-e j-o farmer (emph) him to cart(obl.) of (m. 8g.)

naro jel-e j-o c-e pen mula belt holding(obl.) of told but priest

samy-y-od he cen-a j-o c-e understood that trousers of told.

therefore priest own-self of (m.obl.) trousers (sg.obl.)

j-o naro b-oy hath-e se tat karine
of belt both hands with tight having done

jol-ë held. 6. ja-de gado nay mInj-a v-y-o te ne when cart torrent from was going and

hlkr-i gae me a-y-o to-de mUla ta one ditch in came then priest (emph)

p-y-o vIn-i va-id-i nay me fell having gone flowing torrent in.

7. jo-de god-e var-e di-th-e

ke mula ta ton-ad-o vin-d to tode that priest (emph) dragged goes then

tar khan-i ne mula ke bar kade and plunge having taken priest to out took and

c-e ke nar-e ke kU la chod-e told that belt to what for left.

8. to-de mula c-e ke dis no hoji then priest told that see (emph) yet

pen nar-e ke nay chad-y-o (emph) belt (obl) to havenot left.

9. hI-n verta mInj-a i doro gin-nu this story from this teaching to be taken

ay ke koy pen maru j-i gal is that any (emph) person of(f.) thing

pur-i semj-e viger t-e j-o complete understanding without that(obl) of()

ka-de pan palan na ka-je mewer (suph) obey not should be done.

FREE TRANSLATION

" Belt of a Muslim priest"

- Once upon a time, a Muslim priest, sitting on a cart, was going somewhere.
- 2. There was a torrent in the road.
- 3. When the cart reached the torrent, the fermer said, "now, hold the belt, little tight."
- 4. The farmer told him to hold the belt of the cart but the priest understood that he (farmer) meant the belt of the trousers.

- 5. Therefore, he, with both the hands, held tight the belt of his own trousers.
- 6. when the cart was going from the torrent, and came in a ditch, the priest fell down in the flowing torrent.
- 7. The cart-man saw that the priest was dragged. He jumped in the torrent and took the priest out.

 Then he asked, "why did you leave the belt?"
- 8. The priest replyed, " see, I have not left the belt as yet."
- 9. It is the lesson of this story that without complete understanding nothing should be obeyed.

Text - 2

Rudi jo deder Cistern of frog

1. hlkr-i Kudi me hlkr-o deder ro-d-o v-o one(f) Cistern in one(m) frog had been/living

2. U-n vote hikr-o di Ud-nd-o Ud-nd-o that(obl) near one day flying flying

hlkr-o hens penkhi a-y-o ene pani one swan bird came and water

pi-d-e la ker-i ne ja-ro cUnj drinking for having done as(m) beak

bor-e to-ro u deder puch-o to ke dipped so that frog asks that

beli t-o j-o re j-o thekanu friend you(obl) of(m) residing of(m) place

kI-te ey .

where is

- 3. hans t-e ke d-ro javab d-d t-o swan that(obl) to likethis reply gives

 ke mu j-o thekanu ta vad-e that I(obl) of place (emph) great(m.obl)

 mansarovar me sy

 Mansarovar in is
- 4. ja-je dedar ke jara matho at-that-time (lit.when) frog to little bad

lag-o struck

5. etre u c-3 t-o ke ere dI-th-o therefore that says that oh saw

re dI-th-o i t-o var-o manserover oh saw this you(obl) of(m) Manasarovar

au s-ro ber-uko e-iya ke je ber
I so brave am that if force

minja hikr-o thek d-iya te t-o

from one(m) jump may give then you (obl)

var-e I-n manserover ke ta of(m.obl) this(obl) Mansarovar to (emph.)

hlkr-e-j thek me tlp-i vln-a one(emph)(m.obl) jump in having crossed may go

6. to-de hons ponkhi dedor j-o jovab then swan bird frog of(m) reply

sUn-i men me khll-y-o ene kudi having heard mind in laughed and Cistern

moth-a Ud-i v-y-o from having flown went

7. hl-n varta minj-a i ginan jur-3 to this (obl) story from this knowledge comes

ke och-i skal var-o maru plnd ke that less wisdom of(m) person himself to

okel varo semj-i ne he-r-i koyk wisdom of having considered such any

ded gal ker-e t-e se ker-i ne foolish thing may do that with having done

skel var-e maru ke i dyan të wisdom of person to this notice on

ne gIn-nu khap -8

FREE TRANSLATION

" The frog of a Cistern "

- 1. A frog had been living in a Cistern.
- 2. One day, a Swan came there. As he dipped his beak to drink water, the frog asked, "Friend, where is the place of your residence ?"
- 3. The swan replied, " the place of my residence is in the great Mansarovar."
- 4. It appeared bad to the frog.
- 5. Therefore he told, " your Mansarovar is nothing before me. I am so brave that I can cross your great Mansarovar in a single jump.

- 6. Having heared the reply of the frog, the swan laughed in his mind and flew away from the Cistern.
- 7. It is the moral of this story that a foolish fellow considering himself as the wise one, does this kind of foolish thing. The wise man should not take notice of it.

-00000-

Text - 3

Uth void

1. hlkr-o vekhet hlkr-o vateru vat mlnj-a one time one passenger road by

v-y-o te.

- 2. I-n dI-th-e ke hikr-e maru meri he (obl) saw that one person pestle se Uth J-i niri minj-a karigo with camel of (f) neck from water-melon
 - nice Utar-e te. down was lowering
- 8. se dIs-i ne I-n vicar k-e
 that having seen he(obl) thought(obl)
 (Lit.thinking,did)

ke void bennu sav sokho ay.

4. rUg-i mori khon-i ne nIri me vljen only pestle having taken neck in putting

se game ts-r-i bimari baj-i vIn-s t-i by what-sover disease runs away (lit.havingrun, goes)

5. i vlear-i ne plnd pen hlkr-i this having thought himself also one (f)

mori khen-i ne nlkr-y-o ene rer-u pestle having taken came out and cries

vIjnd-o vIn-3 ke vaid khapd was making (Lit.was putting) that doctor require

void khopd doctor require.

6. se rar-u sun-i ne be tre jen-a those cries having heard two three persons

bar av-y-a one e-y-a ke os-a j-i out came and said that us of(f)

me mad-i ay mother sick is.

7. etre vaid ta vini ne dos-i
hence doctor (emph) went old woman (f)
(lit. -having gone)

j-i niri me be trs moery-u
of(f) neck in two three strokes (lit. pestles)

force with struck (Lit. having struck left)

- 8. vlcar-i dos-i ja ta ram rami v-y-a
 poor old woman of (emph) death occurred
 (Idiom)
- 9. hIn varta mInj-a i dakhlo gIn-pu this story from this example to be taken

ay ke koy pen kem pur-o semj-e is that any (emph) work correct understan-

vlgor kiy-e se ha-ra enjam--ding without doing by like this results

ece t-a

PREE TRANSLATION

" A camel - doctor (quack)"

- 1. Once upon a time, a passenger was going along a road.
- 2. He saw that one person, with the help of a pestle, was lowering down a water melon from the neck of a camel.
- 8. Having seen this, he thought that it was absolutely easy to become a doctor.
- 4. Only taking a postle and striking it on the neck, one can remove any kind of disease.
- 5. Having thought thus, he took a pestle and uttered a cry " does any one need a doctor ".
- 6. Having heard these words, two or three persons cameout and said," our mother is sick".
- 7. The doctor went there and put a few strokes of pestle on the neck of that old woman.
- 8. The poor lady immediately died.
- 9. The lesson from this story is to be taken that such kind of results come out by doing the things without correct knowledge.

Text - 4.

arsu ker

1. hIkr-o arsu beroli j-e jar nice one lazy berry of (m.obl) tree under

sU-t-o v-o
was sleeping.

- 2. moths ni klkr-o ber chon-y-o from above one(m) berry fell down.
- 8. t-e ke c-3 t-o ke au t-o ke that (obl) to says that I you to

khe-d-o-se shall eat.

4. etre me 1-da nu hlkr-o gor-e that time in there from one horse(obl)

ver-o vota-n-u

- 5. t-s ke arsu c-s t-o ke ba jara-k
 that to lazy says that brother please
 hi ber ta khan-i ds t u ta
 this berry (emph) having give you (emph)
 taken
 thalo ve-th-o a-iye
 idle sitting are
- 6. se sUn-i ne gor-e var-e c-e ke tu that having heard horse rider said that you plnd ber vote sU-t-o o-iye yourself (Lit.self) berry near sleeping are toy pen ko no to khen-e still (emph) why not take.
- 7. ta-de arsu matho hala-i c-e ke then lazy head having shaken said that

hay hay gor-e var-a ba tũ
o! oh! horse rider(voc.) brother you
tã aras me mU-th-o p-y-o o-lye.

8. I-n varta minj-a i daro gin-nu this story from this teaching to be taken

(emph) leziness in spoiled lying are.

ay ke hamasa akal vigar j-o is that always sense without of (m)

maru bye ke pan plnd jd-r-o-j person other to also self like

considers (Lit. uses to consider)

FREE TRANSLATION

" A lazy man "

- 1. A lazy man was sleeping under a berry-tree.
- 2. a berry fruit fell down from the tree.
- 3. The lazy man says to it (berry); I shall eat you. "

- 4. At that time, a horse-rider was passing through from there.
- 5. The lazy man said to the horse-rider, "O brother! please pick up this berry fruit and give it to me. you are sitting idle. "
- 6. Having heard that the horse-rider told him, "you are sleeping near the berry fruit. Why are you not taking it ? "
- 7. The lazy man shook his head and said, " O horse-man! you are very lazy. "
- 8. The moral of this story is, that a man having no sense, considers others like himself.

Text - 5.

rld-e vote robab sheep to violin (obl.pl.)

- 1. koy-k rebari vete hlkr-o di hlkr-o Someone shepherd to one day one sengit var-o a-y-o ene rebari ke rebab musician came and shepherd to violin methe keda-k rag sun-a-e on someny songs recited.
- 2. poy vin-en tane sengit ver-e vicar-ë after that leaving time musician thought ke rebari ta mu të raji raji that shepherd (emph) me on happy happy the-i v-y-o hu-d-o will have become.

3. I vicer-i ne sengit vero ta rebari that having thought musician (emph) shapherd

9ma kik monni k-ë from something demand made (Lit. did.)

4. to-de reberi c-e ke t-o juko
then shepherd said that you(obl) which

rap-u vI-d-e t e 1.5 t-ë cries were making (Lit. putting) those (obl.)

me to (emph.) any (emph) interest no

found (Lit.came) reason for that you (obl) of

jî rar-u ta mu vary-u rld-u pan like cries (emph) I of(f.pl.) sheep also

rat di t-y-u vij-e night day make (Lit. put.)

5. se sUn-i ne songit var-e c-o ke that having heard musician said that

rld-e vete rebab vej-a-id-e vere sheep(obl) near violin playing years

thlya toy pan t-e passed (Lit.became) still (emph) those (obl.)

te ki pen eser no the-1
on any (emph) effect no was. (Lit.became)

6. hI-n varta mInj-a i dero mild t-o this story from this teaching comes

ke jinaver jare maru-e ke kela that animals like persons (obl.) to art

j-i kadar na t-i v-S of(f) value no have.

FREE TRANSLATION

" Music and sheep "

 One day a musician came to a shepherd and sang so many songs on the violin.

- 2. At the time of leaving, the musician thought that the shepherd must have become very happy.
- 3. So, the musician made some demand on the shephord.
- 4. The shepherd said, " I found no interest in your cries. Because, my sheep also make cries, like those of yours, day and night
- 5. Having heard that, the musical said, "years passed away by playing the violin near the sheep but there is no effect on them."
- 6. The lesson of this story is, that persons, who are like enimals, have no value for art.

thakar al oge me

1. vdri bəra dirji ne koyk thəkər bəgo vyo te.

2. war i koyk thəkrai ji vari me vini ne Unji kərəb jə
oge me ilko. 3. pUthiya in jo dusmən ayo ne vari vare
ke ce ke mujo vdri vətay nika hdri to jo dogo kəpi vijndose. 4. vari vare vicar ke ke hite kik calaki se
jəvab dibo. 5. i vicari ne in ce ke mu vəta i ki cəraje
ke thəkər ta oge me əi. 6. hin varta minja i ginan ginən jo ay ke əkəl vare maru te jəde aphət pë təde kik
pən gət kəri ne in ke in minja ükərnu khəpë.

PREE TRANSLATION

The Thakar is in the heap of straw

nity) was running away. 2. He went to the garden of another Thakar and hid himself in a heap of straw.

3. His enemy came after him and asked the gardener, "show me my enemy otherwise I shall immediately cut your head."

4. The gardener thought, "Here, I shall reply with some tact." 5. Having thought thus, he told, "How can I say that Thakar is in the heap of straw." 6. The lesson, to be taken from this story is, that a wise man slways overcomes the difficulty in one way or the other.

hojam varo tholo

1. hIkro həjam hikre vanie ji həjamət bənae te.
2. jəde vanie ke thəro kəri girê təde vanie ji mun me hikro thəlo hã. 3. vanio vicar kê hi həjam hin gal jo
səje gam me vəgaro kəndo tə pa ji ta beljiti thidi.
4. i səmji ne in ta həjam ke hikri kori dine ne ce ke
tü ke pən hi gal nə coj. 5. həjam vicare ke hi ta kəmai
jo nəü sadən ay. 6. i səmji ne hikre di hikre girasie
ke pən thəlo thəka kərae. 7. girasie ke ta khar vya əne
tərar kədi ne ter i injo dogo dər thidar kəri chəde.

FREE TRANSLATION

" A knock of barber "

1. A barber was shaving a Vania (a merchant)
2. After shaving the barber struck a knock on the bald head of the vania. 3. The vania thought "It will be my
insult if this barber tells everybody in the village sbout this incident. 4. Having thought thus, he gave a
coin to the barber and told him, "do not tell about this
thing to any body." 5. The barber thought that it was a
new way of earning. 6. So, one day, he made a knock on
the bald head of a land lord. 7. The land lord became
furious. He took out his sword and immediately separated
the head of barber from his trunk.

Text - 8.

kUmbar jo ber

1. hlkro kumbar sind minja nu sindi cokhë jyu pothu beri ne kech kura avyo te. 2. reste më hikri vedi nay echi vi. 3. u kumbar jedë un nay vete pugo tedë - pothë ke eder kheni ne same kinare rekhendo vo. 4. in kinare të hikro lutaro liki ne vetho vo. 5. kumbar jo ber disi ne i lutaro dirjen lego. 6. poy jedë kumbar pothu rekhi girë tedë cë to ke ber të hëdo ay pen pë më hemet j nëy. 7. se suni ne lutaro të kumbar ji niri jeli ne be trë bustu cori dinë. 8. poy mal luti ne helyo vyo. 9. ri sinë him varte min je i dero milë to ke rugo ber pen kem neto ecë.

FREE TRAUSLATION

" Strength of a potter "

1. 1. A potter, having filled up the bags with Sindi-rice, was coming from Sind to Kutch. 2. There was a rivulet on the road. 3. When the potter reached the rivulet, he started to take the bags, without any support and
to put them on the opposite bank. 4. A robber was hidden
there. 5. Having seen the strength of the potter, the
robber became afraid. 6. After putting all the bags, the
potter told (to himself)," I have so much strength but I
have no courage." 7. Having heard that, the robber held
his neck and put a few fists upon him. 8. After that, he

robbed all his material and went away. 9. The lesson of this story is, that strength without courage is of no use.

-00000-

18.9

Text - 9.

di sUkhi

1. paco plud ji di pani veta a to dei ne avyo.

2. tër ger vara pani ja semacar pluhë ta. 3. të ke paco cë to ke paji pani jë slikhë ji ta sima j nay. 4. ne cë to ke pani ke ta khasi ses ay, sero ay der ay jeth ay derani ay jethani ay khasi nani ses ay ne jemai pen khaso ruparo ay. 5. pen rigo etroj dikh ay ke jira mani ene gendi ini bi cijë ji j trap ay. 6. hin varta minja i dero milë to ke hemesa ekel viger ja maru mur jevabdari vari gal kej neta semji segë.

FREE TRANSLATION

" A happy daughter "

1. Paycho (a name) after visiting his married daughter Pani (a name), returned back. 2. The family - members ask about Pani. 3. Paycho tells them that there

is no limit of happiness of our daughter. 4. He adds
that Pani has a good mother-in-law, father-in-law, a good
grand-mother-in-law. She also has her husband's younger
and elder brothers and their wives. Our son-in-law also
is very handsome. 5. The only difficulty is, that, there is want of food and clothing. 6. This story gives
the illustration of those foolish persons who can not judge about the things of basic value.

-00000-

18.10

Text-10.

hane bapa ay si

1. hIkro vekhet vegre jëri vat minja ujari rat
jo hikro pe ene puter boy kidak veda va. 2. reste më ekë ja jer disi ne pe cë ke ere yar pan të muthasi same
thi kedaj cor ecë ta. 3. se suni ne puter ta set kedi
ne ekë vete pugo ene es to ke bapa cor bor ta koy nei pen i ta ek ei. 4. se suni ne bapa pi d vari mursai vetare to ke ek belë lekh ecë hane ta bapa si ay. 5. hih
verta minja i dero milë to ke dilo maru kite pen pol dise te hind ji mursai vetarido ay.

FREE TRANSLATION

" Now father is a lion "

and a son were going in a jungle. 2. Having seen some worth trees, the father cried, "Alas! we are ruined. So many thieves are coming from there. " 3. Having heard that, the son ran to the worth trees and said, "Father there are no thieves here; these are worth trees. 4. Having heard that, the father shows his bravery and says, "let them come in millions. Now I am like a lion. " 5. This story provides the example of cowardly persons who try to show their bravery in a place where it is not needed.

-00000-

18.11

Text-11.

kela. ji keder

1. hIkro gərib kəlakar hIkre gam me vyo. 2.əne ün gam me plnd ji khasi kəra vətare. 3. te ke nöre la kəik maru əcida va. 4. əne In kəla karigiri bədəl te ke chabasi dida va. 5. pən pəisa koy pən nə dido vo. 6. dri rügi chabasi se kəntari ne hikre di kəlakar plnd ji jüpri ke dükha e. 7. te kə üjae la maru veda va. 8. te ke kəlakar es to ke i bəlö dükhi vind. 9. minj ki pən nay. 10. rügi chabasi j bərəy ay. 11. hin varta

mIn ja i glnan mIld to ke khali chabasi se pet noto borje.

PRES TRANSLATION

" Value of art "

he showed his good art. 3. Many persons were coming there to see his art. 4. These persons were giving credit to the artist for his art and skill. 5. But no body was giving (him) any money. 6. The artist became very un - happy with this kind of empty credit, hence one day he fired his own hut. 7. The persons were going to extinguish the fire. 8. The artist tells them, "let it be burnt. There is nothing inside; only empty credit is - filled in. 9. The moral of this story is, that the belly can not be filled with empty words of praise.

-00000-

18.12

Text-12

dosi one mot

1. hIkri dosi ga ji bari berikedi ne verei vi se thatiro la e la keri ne hIkre thekane vesa khade la vethi. 2. tede ekhie me asu sari ne begvan vete erji kereti ke he begvan hIni dukhe thi chorae la hane mot ke helay. 3. se erji suni ne begyan seceli jim ke helac. 4. jede jim eci ne dosi ke ci to ke dosi hel vili to ke bolae la mu ke begyan helac ac. 5. se suni ne dosi ta dirji ve i. ene ajiji keri ne jim ke ce ke ba to bero helnu nay. au ta toke etre laj ti bolaiya ke muji beri j bari ay. Se mu ke Upar. 6. hin varta minja i ginan mili to ke jede maru te dukh pe tede maru met surendo ay. pen jede met ecido ay tede maru ke te minja bece jo men thido ay.

FREE TRANSLATION

" An old woman and death "

1. An old woman, with a heavy bundle of grass, sat down at a place to remove her fatigue and to get some refreshment. 2. At that time she prayed to God, " 0 God! now, send death to make me free from these miseries. "
3. Having heard her request, God, really sent the God of death. 4. The god of Death came there and said to the old woman, " 0 old woman! come quickly, God has sent me to bring you. " 5. Having heard it, she became afraid and humbly told the God of Death, " 0 brother, I will not - come with you. I called you to help me for lifting this heavy bundle. " 6. The lesson of this sory is, that when a person is in trouble, he asks for death but when

death actually comes, the person tries to escape from death.

Text-13

chade tade chadiya

1. hikri lökri je vere veta nu roj hikro hathi vetado vo. 2. hikre di lökri vicar ke ke ej ta mue - hathire ke gudidiyase. 3. i vicari ne in ta hikro phasi gat jo reso tayar ke ne un jo hikro chero pind ji niri më bendë ene byo chero hathi vare reste të rekhë. 4. jedë hathi vetanu tedë phasi ta hathi je peg më eci vei. 5. ene hathi helyo te lökri pen hin beriddrani. 6. se disi ne hikre siare cë ke masi hane hathire ke chedi de. 7. tedë lökri cë chede tedë chediya. 8. hin varta më i semje jo mila to ke edekhai më beri ne vedë së var ke së kedë pen enjam khaso ne eci.

FREE TRANSLATION

It is difficult to leave.

1. An elephant had been daily going through
from the house of a fox (Female). 2. One day the fox
thought, "To-day I shall beat the elephant." 3. Having
thought that, She prepared a rope having a noose. He tied
one end of the rope is her neck and out another end on
the road. 4. When the elephant passed along the road,
his foot came in the noose of the rope. 5. And as the

elephant moved, the fox was dragged along with him.

6. Having seen this, a jackal said " Aunt! now, leave the elephant. " 7. The fox replied, " I am ready to leave him but now, only he may leave me." 8. It is the lesson of this story, that when enmity is created with prove the greats, the result does not/good.

-00000-

18.14

Text-14

voravo

l. hikro vekhet hikri viya ji vel ke chede la keri ne hikro voravo vedo vo. 2. In pind beri bereli benduk ene panidar terar pen kheë ve. 3. reste me - litera disi ne vorave ja peg chuti vya. ne viya ji vel ta lutera dori derar luti ne ka helya vya. 4. poy vorave ke koy puche to ke jede vel te luteni tede tu kite ve ve. 5. vorave ce ke ba au kuro keriya, muja ta boy hethej - ruda pya va. hikre me dal ene bye me terar vi. 6. hin varta minja i ginan ginnu ay ke maru derpok ve te hethiyar pen kem neta ece.

FREE TRANSLATION

" A road - guard "

1. Once upon a time, a road-guard was going to

leave a marriage procession. 2. He had taken a loaded rifle and a sharp sword. 3. Having seen the robbers on the road, the guard became afraid. The robbers openly robbed the procession and went a way. 4. After that, when some one asked the guard, "what were you doing, when the procession was robbed? ". 5. The guard replied, H Brother, what can I do? my hands were engaged. There was a shield in one and a sword in the other hand. ".

The lesson of this story is that the weapons are not useful for a cowardly person.

-000000-

18.15

Text-15

bo pe varo sato

1. g/rasie ji gori dlsi ne hlkre bo pe ke të jo men thyo. 2. i të glresie vete vlni ne veg je sate më Jori hlnen ji gal kë. 3. tedë g/rasie cë ke gori të te diya ke je ve ene methe se koryu dië. 4. bo pe cë ke belë. au veg të hever diya to pen se koryu poy didesë. 5. In hlsab së bo pe të sato kë. 6. poy be car di thlya te g/ra siyo të ayo koryu glnen. 7. jedë bo pe cë ke poy dldosë. 8. dri rite g/rasiyo betrë deka khadë pen bo pe vete koryu theyu në. 9. jedë man glrasiyo cë - ke koryu de nl kë heverei vljë to bëtho. 10. se suni

ne bo pe cë ke so korië ji bedli më gorij kheni vino.

11. etre bo pe veta të veg pen vyo ene gori pen vei.

12. hin verta minja i dero ginnu ay ke bë ji ris pind në keje nikë hdra hal thië ta.

FREE TRANSLATION

" An exchange made by a shepherd "

1. A shepherd saw the maye of a land lord. His mind was inclined to get it. 2. He went to the land-low and told him to get his herd in exchange of his (land lord) mere. 8. The land lord said, " I shall give you my mare if you give me the herd plus one hundred kories, (the coin). 4. The shepherd told, " All right, I shall give the herd just now and lateron, I shall give you hundred kories. 5. In that way the shapherd made the exchange, 6. After a few days, the land lord came to get the amount. 7. The shepherd had no money at that time, hence he replied that he would pay the amount later on. 8. Thus, the land lord came two or three times but the she herd had no money. 9. So, at one time the land -lord said to him, " Give me the amount otherwise I shall beat you." 10. The shopherd told, him " you can take away the mare for your hundred kories. 11. Thus the sheph erd lost his herd as well as the mare. 12. The lesson of

this story is, that we should not be jealous of others, otherwise the result would be like this.

华南安东市市市

CHAPTER

19

KACHI - LEXICON

This chapter contains all those Eachi Lexical items (except composite verbal forms) which have occurred in the thesis, including texts.

The composite verbal forms (viz. Complex and of Compound verbs), which are mere combinations of Simple verbal forms, have not been included in the lexican.

Following or preceding hyphen! -! indicates that the given form is bound one.

The item is repeated if it occurs in the different form classes (i.e. noun, verb, etc).

The alphabetical order is as follows:

VOWELS:

aliuussoo

CORSONANTS:

kgejtaātanpbīmy rlvsh

Note: The nasalised Vovels are given in the beginning.

Ic	you
əiya	I am
olyō	you are (sg.)
ak .	wort tree, milk weed
okol	wisdom
əkê	wort trees (obl.)
okh	eye
əkhyű	eyes
okhië	eyes (obl.)
ogor	foolish
agiya	infront, before
egnidisa	north-east
ogri	difficult
on de	body, organ
engor	bathe (Imp.)
ac	come (Imp.)
ecej	come (Inp.)(hereafter)
ecīda	they will come
ocidi	she will come
acido	he will come
ece .	you / they may come
908	he may come
900	come (Imp.pl.)
ocja	come (hereafter)(Imp.pl.)

to come enu echi white (f.) 33 to day 030 shelter regle bos ojma (-y) test, examine (Imp.) bishop's woed unte atok stop (Imp.) eth eight e thanu ninety eight e theven fifty eight o thgohu eight-fold athoter seventy eight ethyai-ethyavi twenty eight o thyasi eighty eight othvariyo week adi two and half be build (Imp.) adekhai joalousy enentri thirty eight ental1 forty eight onsoth sixty eight therefore, thus, etre helf ad adar support less

father

ada

an	grain
-ane	and
enjam	result
ender	inside, in
endo	blind (m)
obro	weak (m)
oğro	a name
əməldar	officer
əyü	we are
эуо	you are (pl.)
ore	oh I
orji	raquest
or	stick (Imp.)
ore	oh !
989r	effect
988	we (obl.)
ise	We
/ a /	
â	you (obl.)
ãũ	1
ãk	mark (Imp.)
ãto	visit
asu	tears
aē	are (obl.)
akers	attract (Imp.

akas sky akri strong (f) akhani story akhri last fire ag ag-gari train agri stopper ajar trouble ajij1 humility ado neur an bring (Imp.) ath herd adu ginger ap-gat suicide aphat difficulty ab sky mangoes 自物品 mango (obl.) eme ame mangoes (obl.) amu mango amri tamarind 18 ay they came (m) aya ayo he came ayū they came (f) ayro eighteen

needle of a top ar you cause to begin arembay begin (hereafter) (Imp.) arombij arəmbnu to begin laziness ares worship (Imp.) arnd end aro through arpar lazy ersu ali wet (f) wet (m) alo avoi she came they came (m) avya he came avyo aspas near asmani blue

111

Ikai twenty one

Igyara eleven

Ich desire (Imp.)

Icha I may desire

Icha desire

It brick

Iti a wooden piece used for play

Ithyasi

Ida

In

Ini

Injon

Istul

Istri

Ispotal

eighty eight

there

he, she, it, this (obl.)

they (obl.)

engine

wooden stock

woman, wife

hospital

111

ĩ

1~hi

ija

id

inou

isan

like that

he, she, it, this

pain

a Muslim Costival

egg

northern

101

Ukarnu

Uge

Uge-Ule

Ugndo

Uekar

Ujae

Uja (-y)

to dome

dum

for ever

he will rise

sound

for extinguishing

extinguish (Imp.)

bright Ujvariyo Uth camel Ud fly (Imp.) Udi having flewn Unai white ant Uda there Udo fly (Imp. pl.) Uando he will fly come down (hereafter) (Imp.) Utorja Utarnu to come down Utorbo ws shal come-down Utare he brought down that much Utro he will come down Utrado stand up (Imp.) Uthi cause to stand up (Imp.) Uthyar Uthyara (-y) cause one to get some one stood up he stood up Uthyo Udgatan opening that (obl.) Un nineteen Unoi Unaiye nineteen (obl.) those (obl.) ibi1 open (Imp.) Upot

carry (Imp.)

Upar

Uptido he will open Upyogi useful anything given to make exchange Upryaman equal stop (Imp.) Ubi Ubo stop (Imp.pl.) Ubo standing Ubyar cause to stop (Imp.) Ule evening Ulti vomiting Ultyū vomitings he went Usyo / ũ /

u clean (Imp.)

u cover (Imp.)

u that

ujari bright (f.)

ujas light

un wool

unu deep (m)

101

ēsi eighty ekāt solitude

ekanu ninety one ekavan fifty one eki urine ekoter seventy one forty one ek-tali thirty one ek-tri ek-dam immediately eighty one ek-yasi ek-v1 twenty one ek-soth sixty one en eni anvil therefore, thus etre etro that-much eri heel

181.

3ri like that (f)
3ro like that (m)
3san favour

101

ok
ogan-sinter
ogan-cali
ogan-tri

vomit (Imp.)

sixty nine

thirty nine

twenty nine

ogan-panja forty nine fifty nine ogen-seth heap of straw (obl.) oge heap of straws ogo ogn-a-ë si seventy-nine ograi belch less (f) ochi odo near pour (Imp.) 30 northern otro cast ober a dish of brinjals oro orakh recognize (Imp.) oro shadow orkhan acquaintance

101

okhor dryness
okho difficult
ojar tool
oro like that (m)

1 k 1

kei did (f.)

kaci raw (f) raw (m) kaco kutch (place) kech kaje should be done kot cut (Imp.) kati having out kot1 strong (f) strong (m) kato ka tau to cut kathnai difficulty kad take out (Imp.) kad1 having taken out kade he took out kedo take out (Imp. pl.) kadnu to take out kade whon small particle gen. small particle kon1 kande thorn spin (Imp.) kot katar scissors having soun koti ke tnu to spin kadar value ugly (m) kad-rupo kon ear

having become unhappy

kontari

neck

kenth

kendo he will do

kep eut (Imp.)

kepa eetton

keri having out

kapo wooden sleaper

kapnu to cut

kapro eloth

keph cough

kabul accept (Imp.)

kabulnu to accept

kabo we shall do

kabjo control

kam vork

kemai having earned

kemai earning

kamau earning man

kams (-y) earn (Imp.)

kamara (-y) cause to earn (Imp.)

kemarara (-y) cause one to make some one

earn (Imp.)

keep thrill (Imp.)

kempi having thrilled

tempndo he will thrill

ker do (Imp.)

karae he caused to do

keri having done

karcalo

ker

kərəb

kora-kola

karo

kerkndo

karndo

kela-kera

kelakar

kelpido

kac

kagro

ka na

kani

kanie

kanu

kane

kanyū

kar

karon

karigo

karier

karigiri

karo

kavyo

klda

crab

be boiled

straw

art

ring

he will thunder

it will boil

art

artist

he will create

glass

erow

one-eyed (m.pl.)

ine-eyed (f.)

one-eyed (f. Obl.pl.)

one-eyed (m)

one-eyed (m.obl.)

one-eyed (f.pl.)

work

in case, because

watermelon

cobra

skill

black

poetry

where

klaak some where kIt (e) where who, someone (obl.) kIn shore, bank (obl.) kInere shore, bank kInaro some, who (obl.pl.) kini fall down (Imp.) kIr kIran hundred lac kIrone hundred lac (oblp1) kĩ any thing kik some thing kiye doing kUwhat kUari axe kunglo one with devitalised limbs kUchndo he will utter erumble (Imp.) kUt kUt1 having crumbled kUta dogs kUt1 bitch kUto dog kUtyū bitches kUmbar potter kura towards

what (obl.)

what '

kUre

kUro

kudi cistern ke. some one, who (obl.) ke did that, to ke ketl1 kettle keda (k) so many, so much who, some one ker KSP when ko (k) some one kot fort kod leprosy carve (Imp.) kotor kotzrido he will carve kothri bag kopi copy koy (k) any kori a coin (f.) korie a coin (f. obl. pl.) koro us-used (m) koryū a coin (f. pl.) ko why krar cruel krurta cruelty kha-ë he took khong cough (Imp.) khangi. having coughed

he will cough

khangndo

khaj be carried khatja win (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) khatndo he will win khad pit take, lift, carry (Imp.) khan ment having taken khane you may take take (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) khanje to take khannu khando he will take is required khopd kha po wooden sleeper khapja be consumed (Imp.pl.) it will be consumed khapndo khapbo we shall be consumed khabar news shoulder khabo khorab bad eat (Imp.) kha khaido he will eat khai having eaten khae he may eat eat (Imp. pl.) khao eat (hereafter) (Imp.) khaj khaja eat (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) khanyū mines

manure

khater

khade they ate khade eating khado ate khabo we shall eat khar anger khali empty khasi good (f) khasie good (f. obl.pl.) khasa good (m. pl.) khase good (m. obl.pl.) khase good(m. obl.) khaso good (m) khasyū good (f. pl.) khlyo we may eat khlyo eat (Imp.pl.) khllndo he wilklaugh khllyo he laughed khIsak slip (Imp.) khlskndo he will slip khir milk khUt be reduced khUrp1 seraper khU1 be opened khedose I shall est

khodnu

khed

khod

dig (Imp.)

to dig

sorrow

he will wait khobrado kheru farmer kho1 open (Imp.) 181 gou COW cows (obl.pl.) gatte be fixed (Imp.) gac much god goenu to be fixed past of / gae / gooyroar (Imp.) goj gazal (a form of poetry) gejel goji having roared gojnu to roar he will roar ge jndo gathpast of / gas / god fort cart (obl.) gade gado cart gone he counted bell gont gannu to count past of / goc / gotgadya prose genti, gentri smell bell

genth

joint (Imp.)

clothing gandi stick in mud (Imp.) gap past of / gap / gapywhat-so-ever gome be melt (Imp.) gar house gor abortion gord-pat garib poor gorjon roaring gerden neck heat gormi geverner governor rub (Imp.) ges past of / gas/# gosy gae diteh wound, grass ga gat manner gad strong gadi cart past of / gay / gat--gaysang (f) gati eushion gadli calf gabo village gam small village gamro sing (Imp.) gay

gay-

past of / gay /

abuse gar TOTALCE garo tale, thing gal gaslet kerosene take (Imp.) gln gInen taking gluan knowledge to take, to be taken gInnu giroe planets (obl.pl.) gIro planet glre took gīvē wheat (obl.pl.) gid vulture . gujor pass away (Imp.) gUjrndo he will pass away gUngUnat whisper gudidiyasê I shall beat (f.) gUrndo he will like, he will love, loved, liked, guryo gulab rose eu. excreta gug-papu dumbness geu wheat gdr-kayde illegal 20 cow goiê cows (obl.)

COMB

göyü

lizard, monitor 03 gou lizards, monitors, 200 lizards (obl.) gokhlo hole gotyo searched gora horses gori mare gorie mares (obl.) gorê horses (obl.) gore horse (obl.) goro horse goryū mares land-lord (obl.) grasie grasiyo land-lord 101 cel four (obl.) cak bite coki grind-mill cot lick (Imp.) cetni sauce eanu gram condor moon cap lip

having cheved

glittering

skin

cebi

com

camkar

camkndo it will glitter eameo spoon cor graze (Imp.) carap madness cerbi fat coryo mad cer elimb (Imp.) cerja climb (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) cornu to climb ear bo we shall climb ca I may say ead moon ca(y) tea caie tea (obl.pl.) cak chalk cakhri wooden shoe cag love for chile cayu tea (pl.) car four cali forty calie forty (obl.) cImto tongs elr be teased c1je things (obl.) ciro cut cUk miss (Imp.)

past of / cUk /

eUk--eUky-

select (Imp.) elind eUnj beak e Umali forty four cUmo-ter seventy-four eUr move (Imp.) chew (Imp.) C212 lime cunu cunri a garment ce told cene trousers (obl.) awake (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) cetga cetpu to awake cet bo we shall awake cer tease 04 he may say coi~covi twenty four coiye twenty four (obl.) eoktho frame of door cokhe rice (obl.pl.) cor thief cor-bor thief etc covi~coi twenty four cotri thirty-four số soth sixty four co say (Imp.) coj say (hereafter) (Imp.)

fourteen

coğo

codmu

copen

copne

copri

copher

cora (-y)

coraje

coryanu

coryasi

cori

cya

суо

cha

chai-chavi

chauter

ehad

chadi

chadiya

chade

chade

chadyo

chan

chand

chandnu

chanbo

chanyo

chatri

fourteenth

fifty four

fifty four (obl.)

book

around

cause to say

it should be caused to say

ninty four

eighty four

having fixed

they said

he said

six

twenty six

seventy six

leave (Imp.)

having left

he may leave

you left

he may leave

he left

fall (Imp.)

clean with cloth (Imp.)

to clean with cloth

we shall fall

he fell down

thirty six

ninety six chanu chapan fifty six fifty six (obl.) chapne twenty six chavi chavni encampment chasath sixty six chabasi praise chIj . be plucked (Imp.) ehIn pluck (Imp.) chlr be angry chUti having left ehup hide (Imp.) c)nu touch (Imp.) past of / chu / chutchetali forty six chero end chokra boys chokri girl cholrie girls (obl.) chokre boys (obl.) ehokre boys (obl.) chokro boy chokryū girls eighty six chlyasi chorae making free

1,11

-3	expresses emphasis
10	if
jeg	world
joga	place
Jongol .	forest
303	judge
jon	give birth (Imp.)
Jonda	hair of child (pl.)
1000	when, at that time,
Jones	take birth (Imp.)
jenndo	he will born
Jobro	strong
Jobkar	shining
Jobkndo	it will shine
jamai	son-in-law
jor	water
jora (k)-jira	little
joruri	necessary
Jarbo	jav
Jo1	hold (Imp.)
jeli	having held
Jalaiyase	I held (f.)
joloj	be held (Imp.)
jeleyű	held (f.pl.)
jeladi	she will be held

jolade delado Jelaido deladose Jolaidi Jolai jolaija jelaije jelaibo jolaiya jalae Jolaj Jelaja icalet Jalaja jolani Jalanu Jolanuse Jalane Jelayo iolayo Jolaradi jelarade jelarado

ja laradose

you will be held he will be held he will cause to hold I shall be held she will cause to shold having caused to hold cause to hold (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) it should be caused to hold we shall cause to held I may cause to hold he caused to hold caused to be held I may be caused to be held having caused to be held you be caused to be held (Imp.pl.) she was held he was held I was hold you were held caused to hold cause to hold (Imp.pl.) she will be caused to be got held you will be caused to be held

he will be caused to be got held

I shall be caused to be got held

jelaradi	she will be caused to be got held
Jelara(-y)	cause to get held (Imp.)
jelaraido	he will cause to get hold
jolarai	having caused to et held
jelaraija .	cause to get held (hereafter) (Imp.pl.)
jolaraije	should be caused to get held
jelaraibo	we shall cause to get held
Jelaraiya	I may cause to get held
jelaraë	he caused to get held
jolaraj	be caused to be got held (Imp.)
jelerajā	I may be caused to be got held
jelaraji	having caused to be got held
jolarajo	be caused to be got held (Imp.pl.)
jelarani	she was caused to be got held
jelaranu	he was caused to be got held
jolaranuse	I was caused to be got held
jelarane	you were caused to be got held
jelara(-y)	cause to get held (Imp.)
jelarayo	caused to get held
jolarayo	cause to get held (Imp.pl.)
jela (-y)	cause to hold (Imp.pl)
jelîda .	they will hold (m)
jelidi .	she will hold
jelidië~jelinië	you will hold (f.)

you will hold (m.)

jelide-jeline

Jelido	he will hold
jelîdosê	I shall hold
jəlîdyű-jəlinyű	they will hold (f)
jeli	having held
Jelija	held (hereafter) (Imp.pl.)
jelije	should be held
jelinië	you will hold (f)
jeline	you will hold (m)
Jalibo	we shall hold
Jeliyã	I may hold .
jeliye .	you may hold
Jole	he held
jele	you held
jolja	I may be held
jelji	having been held
jelje	you may be held
Je133	he may be held
jeljnu.	to be held
jelnu	to hold
jelye	they held
jelya	held (m.pl.)
jelyasî	we held
jelyű	held (f. pl.)
Jelyo	held (m.sg.)
jelyo	hold (hereafter) (Imp.pl.)
jov	barley

reply

davet

values importance jovabdari zine joset of (m.pl.) -ja know (Imp.) jan rememberance jad jadu magic jam-phol guava jay-phol nut meg name of a tree jar jar tree JIKI whoever, what so ever, which place, where dite who ever (obl.) jin animal Jinavar who ever (obl.pl.) JIni jIb tongue god of death JIm little JIra drip (imp.) jIv drip (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) jīva JIvnu to drip JIVEO we shall drip jivyo dripped Jĩ as, like live (Implot (f) (一)注 win (Imp.) jit jitnu to win

jiro	living
J Uko	whoever, which,
jur	be injured
jur	be connected
jūpŗi	hut
jê	whoever (obl.)
-je	of (m.obl.sg.)
jeth	husband's elder brother.
jethani	husband's elder brother's wife.
18	victory
18p1	like (f.)
jere	like (m.obl.sg.)
18po	like (m.sg.)
-10	of (m.sg.)
Jogya	fit
jor	connect (Imp.)
-jyū	of (f.pl.)
1:1	
tor	go away (Imp.)
tet	tight
tane	ti e (obl.)
tar	send away (Imo.)
ţlk	stay (Imp.)
tlk-tlk	sound produced by a watch

tip1 having jumped hill tekro kernel of coconut topro topli basket toplyu baskets toli group tolo louse thoker a community a big sound thoka thekrai a person belong to Thakar community be calm, be cold ther thele idle thik correct thek Jump thekanu place thekane place (obl.) bald thoro knock tholo 101

dek cover (Imp.)

deknu to cover

der be poured (Imp.)

dar pour (Imp.)

dal shield

dilo weak

der	heap
derani	dragged
goli	drumer
	/1/
ā a i	curd
āsi i	having given
dakhnu	southern
dot	burry (Imp.)
deg.	foolieh
dend	tooth
dar	den
deri	having feared
derpok	coward
dasmu	tenth
dao	wise
daco	Jaw
dado	grand father
daytri	sickle
dar	pulse (seeds)
dith-	past of / dls /
dithe	saw (pl.)
ditho	saw (sg.)
āln-	past of / de /
dine	gave

see (Imp.)

dis

ālsi	having seen
dise	he may see
dlenu	to see
dlande~dlane	you will se (m)
dlando	he will see
7ālsbo	we shall see
āī .	dey
diora	days
dîțri	nipple
đỉ da	they will give
āfai	she will give
ą̃idosē	I shall give
diya	I may give
diyê	you may give
đukh	SOPPOW
ā Ukhē	sorrows (obl.pl.)
aud	milk
'ded	one and half
dedar	frog
der	husband's brother
dera-dyar	cause to give (Imp.)
derani	husband's brother's wife
ā e	give (Imp.)
go	fault
ão1	wooden ladle
₫oê	ten (obl.)
dogo	head

doy milk (Imp.) doynu to milk doro thread dosi old woman doso old man do ten cause to give (Imp.) dyar dyo give (imp.pl.) 1 01 that, then -to tekliph trouble tode then tenado dragged tetve element tor swim (Imp.) taraph towards tora pond torar-tolvar sword terchor condemn (Imp.) terchornu to condemn tolvar sword tovo griddle -ta expresses, emphasis auxiliary, expressess beginning of action (m. pl.) -ta

make one swim (Imp.)

tar

tara stars taro ster taro lock tite there, at that place tIn that (obl.) those (obl.) timi tlryasi eighty three ーセミ auxiliary expresses beginning of action (f. sg.) tir arrow tit be broken tur be weighed tUlsi basil tu you te that, those (obl.) te on auxiliary expresses beginning -te of action in the past tejasvi glorious tero thirteen terko sun-shine totri thirty three tsyar ready 七日中 then, at that time tiro name of a village

like that (f.)

like that (m)

teri

toro

auxiliary expresses beginning to of action. (m.sg.) totra(-y) stammer (Imp.) stammering totro artillary top-khanu still, yet toy break (Imp.) tor tyu auxiliary expresses beginning of action (f.pl.) trouter seventy three tran need, want ninety three tranu contengent trIpti trim drip (Imp.) tri three (obl.) tri thirty tretali forty three tresath sixty three trei-trevi twenty three (obl.) treiye twenty three (obl.) twenty three trevi tra three trSpan fifty three fifty three (obl.) trapne thai became (f.) thok tired (Imp.) thad cold

cold (m. sg.)

thado

themblo

thoyu

ther

thakiro

thlya

thīda

thidi

thido

-th1

thie

thiyo

thUk

thUk-dani

thoth-panu

thor

piller

became (f.pl.)

layer

fatique

became (m.pl.)

they will become

she will become

he will become

from

you may become

he became

salivate (Imp.)

spitting pot

emptiness

stem

101

doka

doj

danus

dem

demka(-y)

der

derem-sara

derti

darvajo

Shoves

very good

DOW

moment

threaten

door (Imp.)

inn

land

door

dor trunk dero example dava medicine davae medicines (obl.) dovau medicines dakhelo example past of / day/ datdadro ladder dabro wooden sleeper dablo tin suck (Imp.) day decoity daro dIraj fear (Imp.) having feared dIrji he will fear dirindo dlrjy-dlrnpast of / dlraj / dirjen fear dIrnpast of/dIraj/ Si daughter diu-diru daughters die-dire daughters (obl.) dir. patient diru daughters dire daughters (obl.) dUkhae he burnt aus be shaken (Imp.) dubja be shaken (hereafter)

(Imp.pl.)

d Ubnu to be shaken dubbo we shall be shaken dusman enemy du wash (Imp.) duar-dura(-y) cause to wash (Imp.) duara (-y), durara (-y) cause to get washed (Imp.) duo smoke dunu to wash dup-dani censer dura(-y) cause to wash (Imp.) durara (-y) cause to get washed (Imp.) de devils (obl.) de devil dotio é garment doben washerwoman dobi washerman dosti friendship dosdar friend dori-derar openly in bright day run (Imp.) dor he will run dorndo consideration dyan dvar door

by

island

fear

dvara

dvip

dra

/n/

no, not no Fen is/are not nou new nok nose neke noses (obl.) nakso map nekhod destruction dance (Imp.) nec he may dance nace to dance noenu noth nose-ring napho profit bow down (Imp.) nem having bowed down nemi nomnu to bow down male nor ninety nine novanu nevinta novelty na name não names (obl.) natok drama nay . is not

> grand mother-in-law torrent belt

nali drain

nani-sas

nay

naro

nalo

nIka

nIkrndo

nIkryo

nIri

nIvyasi

-ni

nice

nUskho

-1212

ne ..

ne

ndre

nevu

nõ

nõu-noru

noe nore

not buk

norū

norê

nyar

namo

otherwise

he will come out

he came out

neck

eighty nine

of

down, under

prescription

from

took

and

looking

ninety

nine, bride, daughter-in-law

daughters-in-law

daughters in-law (obl.)

note-book

daughters-in-law

daughters-in-law (Obl.)

look (Imp.)

101

pai

paisa

pak--pacy-

fell down (f.)

money

past of /pac/

pakar. catch (Imp.) ripe, strong pako foot pog pankhi bird be ripen pac having ripened peci pacypast of /pac/ pachmi western but, also, that expresses neq emphasis pathri stone leaf pon pone leaves, (obl.) pane five (obl.) arbiter pane 'pancyasi eighty five five ponj fifty ponja panji twenty five fifteen penro payū fell (f.pl.) per last year, be nourished (Imp.) ner echo pargo perdo courtain pål moment

a kind of fish

polo

pastada they will repent/they will be repented. postado he will repent/he will be repented. posta repent (Imp.) postara (-y) cause to repent pastarara(-y) cause to get repented pa we (you and 1) (obl.) DE I may fall paco a name (m) pacmu fifth patri thirty five pesath sixty five one quarter Da pani vater panidar sharp a name (f) pani sin Dan stone payou fulfil (Imp.) par parokh examine (Imp.) to examine parokhmu parkha cause to examine (Imp.) examine (hereafter) (Imp.) parkhij bring up (Imp.) par neighbour-hood pare

obeying

palen

patro	spade
pase	side, to, near
pleanu	ninety five
pleaven	fifty five
pleoter	seventy five
plekari	pump
plcyasi	eighty five
pind	self
pln	beg (Imp.)
plrou	dawns
olros	dawns (obl.)
pIro	dawn
pi	drink (Imp.) grind
pithpisy-	past of /pi/ 'grind'
pit-pid	past of /pi/ 'drink'
pide	drinking
pira(-y)	cause to drink
pirara(-y)	cause to get drunk
pisy-	past of /pi/ 'grind'
pug	past of /pUj/
pUgo	he reached
pUch	ask (Imp.)
pUch	tnil
p Uche	esked
pUche	tails (obl.pl.)
p Ueh8	he may ask

pUf reach (Imp.) pujej reach (hereafter) (Imp.) pUth back pUthiya afterwards pUter son forty five pUstali pubra puppies worship (Imp.) puj complete, correct, (f) puri complete, correct (m) Duro pe may fall pejro cage father pe pet belly pensIl pencil he may fall pg po dung after Doa poe dungs (obl.) eye-lid popeo pothu bags pothe bags (obl.) роу after poro ball of mud pol weak point bring up (Imp.) pos poda they will fall down

fall down (Imp.) po fall down (hereafter) (Imp.) poja three quarters (m.pl.) pona three quarters (f.) poni ponie three quarters (f.obl.) three quarters (m.sg.) ponu three quarter (obl.) pone ponyu three quarters (f.pl.) wideness porai wide poro they fell down pya cause to drink (Imp.) pyar cause to get drunk pyara(-y) auxiliary / po/ 'fall' -pye expresses continuity he fell down руо land prothvi according to premane prathna prayer phoni comb phatva belief phorma order (Imp.) pherpherat flutter fruit phal phasi neose be torn phat tear (Imp.) phar

phit be fadeup phIt--phItypast of / phit/ phlth--phlsypast of /phis/ phir move (Imp.) be crumbled (Imp.) phis phisypast of /phis/ be split, be breken (Imp.) phUt phUt--phUtypast of / phUt/ phUtbal foot-ball phephso lung spread (Imp.) phela pholara cause to spread (Imp.) phor break (Imp.)

101

bree

bok gabble (Imp.) gabble (hereafter)(Imp.) bakja boknu to gabble bakbo we shall gabble past of / baj/ 'run away' bog beget worshipper bago he ran bagti worship God bagvan bacav safety bace they may survive

escaping

run (Imp.) bod bojoj run (hereafter) (Imp.) bois I may run ited having run bojia bolja bajnu to run bojnda bajbo we shall run bolybatkndo badal exchange badlndo bodl1 exchange bodle in exchange bon benaibo we shall make bana banse he made he may become Saed bonnu to become banduk rifle bonbo ber fill (Imp.) barai

-bara

pakodi (a fried dish) run (bereafter) (Imp.pl.) they will run past of / baj/ he will wander he will change break, become (Imp.) you may be come we shall become filed (f.) from

bori having filled

beri bundle

bordli loaded

berober like

berjo be filled (hereafter) (Imp.pl.)

bole, bole all right

bolo good (m)

belyu: good (f.pl.)

batho stick

ba brother

bag garden

baj hawk

bajyū vegetables

bab any sweets given to a child

babat about

bar weight

bari heavy

baldi bucket

blgrndo he will be spoiled

blj drench

bljy- past of /blj/

blt well

bln- past of /blj/

bimari disease

bUe-bua-boa- worshippers

bUe worshipper (obl.)

bUr be crumbled

worshippers bus worshipper buo be-IjIti insult ben sister benu-bennu-benru sisters hene-benne-benre sisters (obl.) bennu sisters sisters (obl.) benne benru sisters benre sisters (obl.) beri along (f) along (m) bero boyro cell bo worshipper boa worshippers boe worshippers (obl.) worshipper (obl.) boe shepherd (obl.) bope

151

be two

begin be tied

betri thirty two

bed tie (Imp.)

bede tied

Sar strength ger. be burnt (Imp.) 5ari having burnt baruko brave ba e.rm bai-bavi twenty two bei mother banu ninety two Bapa father Bayri woman, wife bar out side bar burn (Imp.) baro twelve Barmu twelfth bavan fifty two bayne fifty two (obl.) baver name of a tree Bavi twenty two baseth sixty two Би seed blpor noon 51 two (obl.) BUar sweep (Imp.) 5 Udo old (m) ชีบลี sink (Imp.) 60di having sinked, sinked (f)

sink (Imp. pl.)

o Udo

bUstů fists 5ē others (obl.) betali forty two ber berry fruit Beroli berry tree bel1 friend boy both bor dip, drown (Imp.) borë dipped bolaiya I may call bolas he may call Syasi eighty two Eye other (obl.) Бую other

/m/

no, not mo moie buffaloes (obl.) makh fly makhan butter men beg (Imp.) meni having begged manni demand mo nnu to beg mac fire be fattened (Imp.) mac macy-"matpast of / mac/

mochor-dani	mosquito-net
mochi	fish
machl1	small fish
moja	interest
mejbut	strong
mo t	jer
mo th	temple
med	dead body
moā sem	a pair of clothes
mon	maund
inem	pearl
menko .	besd
monda(-y)	limp (Imp.)
mot	vote
mot-	past of / mac/
moto	sign
motha	from above
mothe	on
me tho	head
med	honey
шэп	mind
men	obey (Imp.)
moni	having obeyed (lem.)
monja	obey (hereafter) (Imp.)
mannu	to dey
mont to	spell .

secretary

mentri

mantre spells (obl.) manbo we shall obey menyo obeyed mayū buffalo (f.pl.) die (Imp.) mor he will die morndo knit (Imp.) me I, flesh mas flesh (obl.pl.) mase madi sick (f.) mother ma maUru mothers madre mothers (obl.) mate for math silence bad matho mansprover Mansarover lake messure map maphu to measure mother's brother's wife mami kill (Imp.) mar killed (f.sg.) marsi road Beren be killed (Imp.) maroj maradi she will be killed

you will be killed

marade

marado

marado (se)

mara (-y)

mara

maraîdi

maraido

marai

maraija

maraije

maraibo

maraiya

maraj

maraja

maraji

marajo

marani

maranu

maranu(se)

marane

marayo

marayo

mararadi

mararade

mararado

mararado (se)

he will be killed

I shall be killed

cause to kill (Imp.)

garland

she will cause to kill

he will cause to kill

having caused to kill

cause to kill (hereafter) (Imp.)

should be caused to kill

we shall cause to kill

I may cause to kill

caused to be killed (Imp.)

I may be caused to be killed

having caused to be killed

be caused to be killed(Imp. pl.)

she was killed

he was killed

I was killed

you were killed

caused to kill

cause to kill (Imp. ol.)

she will be caused to be got

killed

you will be caused to be got

killed

he will be caused to be got

killed

I shall be caused to be got

killed

marara(-y)

mararaīdi

mararaldo

mararai

mararaija

mararaije

mararai 50

mararaiya

mararaj

mararaja

mararaji

mararajo

mararani

mararanu

mararanu(so)

mararane

mararayo

mararayo

marida

maridi

maridie-marinie

marine-marine

marido

maridyu marinyu

cause to get killed (Imp.)

she will cause to get killed

he will cause to get killed

having caused to be got killed

cause to get killed (hereafter)

(Imp.pl.)

should be caused to be got

killed

we shall cause to get killed

I may cause to get killed

caused to be got killed (Imp.)

I may be caused to be got

kalled

having caused to be got killed

be caused to be got killed

(Imp.pl.)

she was caused to be got killed

he was caused to be got killed

I was caused to be got killed

you were caused to be got

killed

caused to get killed

cause to get killed (Imp.pl.)

they will kill

she will kill

you will kill (f)

you will kill (m)

he will kill

they will kill (f.)

kill (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) marija marije should be killed marinie you will kill (f) marine you will kill (m) marinyu they will kill (f) maribo we shall kill mariya I may kill mariyê you may kill mara you killed he killed mare marja I may be killed marji having been killed marje you may be killed marja he may be killed marjuu to be killed care of marphat marya you/they killed marya. killed (obj.pl.) marya(si) we killed marayu killed (obj.f.pl.) maryo killed (obj.m.sg.) kill (Imp.pl.) maryo maru person marue persons (obl.)

material

gardener

aunt

mal

mali

masi

mIt	check
mIti	dust
mIthi	eweet (f.)
mIni	cat
wInj	inside
minja	from inside
minjara	to inside
mInyū	cats
mIp	be gathered (Imp.)
mlŗī	everything, all (obl.)
mire	everything, all
mIld	he may meet
mIsri	sugar candy
mU-~mory-	past of / mar/
mU1	died (f)
mUe	dead (m)
mUo	died (m)
mUo	dead (m)
mUn	gram
mUn	beg (Imp.)
mUnii	having begged
mUth	clenched hand
mUthmUsy-	past of /mUs/ ' destroy'
mUthasi	we were destroyed
mUtho	he was destroyed
mUn	bald head
mUn1	saint

he will be entangled munindo he will smile mUrkndo mUrgo cock come back, be bent (Imp) mUr mUros brave mUrsai bravery mUla Muslim priest be destroyed (Imp.) mUs past of / mUs / mUsymu I (obl.) miir basic foolishness murkhai me me in buffalo me men-bati candle fenugreek methi land medni kindness merban1 mõe faces (obl.) moero boot moti pearl motie pearls (obl.) bend (Imp.) mor

happiness

death

pestle

pestles

moj

not

mori

moryū

181

yontro

yam

yavan

-уа

yar

уодуэ

machine

god of death

foreigher

or

friend

suitable

1 r /

rakh

rakhi

rakha

rakha

rokhja

rakhje

rokhnu

rakhnda

rakhndo

rakhbo

rakhya

reg

ran

roni

ronnu

rof

ret.

put (Imp.)

having put

he put (past)

put (Imp.pl.)

put (hereafter) (lmp.)

should be put

to put

they will put

he will put

we shall put

they put (past.)

vein

colour

having coloured

to colour

be cooked

blood

red (f) reti cook (Imp) rod redi having cooked radi useless rodnu to cook ron widow offend (Imp.) renjar rob God rebab violin rob cooked rice play (Imp.) 200 M having played remi to play rommu he will bellow rombndo Lol ery rəryü cries rev sound taste ros roso rope road (obl.) reste rādyū games king of Kutch ra-ray song rag rag-vIdya music kingdom, state raj king raja

happy

raji

rajaë kings (obl.) raj-mal palace raj-hans SWAD rani queen rat night ratio nights (obl.) natyū nights raper name of a village ram a name expresses exclamation ram ram king of Eutch ray raydon a name raru cries rlau sheep (pl.) rīdē sheep (obl.pl.) rīch bear rinna brinjals rite in manner ris Jealousy rUgi only (f.) rugo only (m.) rUda engaged r-Unpast of /ru/ weep (Imp.) ru was cause to weep (Imp.) ruar

handsome

ruparo

rubru before re expresses exclamation rebari shepherd rok detain (Imp.) roknu to detain roj daily rodo he will stay stay (Imp.) ro cause to stay (Imp.) reer stayed, remained ryo

111

lekra bamboos lakre bamboos (obl.) lekre bamboo (obl.) lokro bamboo lokh lac lakhe lac (obl.pl.) strike, touch (Imp.) lag they struck laga legi having stricken lago he struck strike (hereafter)(Imp.pl.) lagja lognu to strike lagio we shall strike 19g-19gypast of / log /

past of /lo/ lathpast of /lab/ lad--labyfind (Imp.) lab having found lobi labnu to find lonu far fight (Imp.) lor Lolkar challenge laskar army -la for he may apply las lag chance lado bride-groom lab profit laybri library lalcu greedy lavni a form of poetry las dead body lik hide (Imp.) having hidden liki 11ko he hid 1Imb besmear (Imp.) 1 Imbnu to besmear llk--llk-y past of /llk/ 11kh write (Imp.) 11kh louse

louses (obl.)

likhie

likhio	louse
101	blood
1016	blood (obl.pl.)
100	swing (Imp.)
1Uyū	blood (pl.)
lüţi	having robbed
lütani	robbed (f.)
lütera	robbers
lekh	count (Imp.)
letyo	he laid
lep	besmear (Imp.)
lőkri	fox (f.)
10	come down (Imp.)
1 1 /	
veldi	flowing (f.)
vei	she went (f.)
voiê	you went (f.)
veid	doctor
veidpo	doctorship
vəUrü	brides

flow (Imp.) vo vakhat

voUrê

vou

vae

time

brides (obl.)

it may flow

bride

veg. vegaro vogre voj vojalde vejnu veg-vejy vetado -veta vetanu veti -vote veth-vesyvad vedi vadnu redi vade vode vado veni vota(-y) vetarido vetarê vatare

ven

herd spreading forest (obl.) ring (Imp.) playing to ring past of /vej/ passing from passed. having twisted to, near past of /vas/ cut (Imp.) having cut to eut big (f.) big (m.obl.pl.) big (m.obl.sg.) big (m.) having woven show (Imp.) he will show he showed he may show

forest

veni venraj voy voyů vor rerev vori voru Vee vorue vertrdo versad Vor vəri vel V22 vol1 volnu ves ves vosi vasy-V8 vaka

vaki

vako

having gone a name age went (f.pl.) husband returned (f.) having returned wolf year wolves (obl.) he will behave rain name of a tree a dish of pulse creeper plough (Imp.) having ploughed to plough control rain (Imp.) having rained past of /vos/ I may be zigzag (m.pl.) zigzag (f.sg.) zigzag (m.og.)

vâkyũ	zigzag (f.pl.)
vão	read (Imp.)
vãcop	reading
vaenu	to read
VB	wind
va	they were
va va	well done !
vajo	a musical instrument
vat	road
vataru	passenger
vatko	bowl
vadyū	wives of carpenters
van	ship
venie	person belong to Vaniya community (obl.)
vanio .	person belong to Vaniya community
vat	mouth
vad	increase
vadi	increase
ven	vehicle
veni	ashes
van	left, opposite
var	hair
vara	of (m.pl.)

of (f.sg.)

of (m.obl.sg.)

vari

vare

of (m.sg.) Varo varta story vegri garden house of animal (obl.) vare val yard . vali loveable (f.) vavto flag Vas inhabitation vasī we were vasi inhabitant -veste for vIkon sell (Imp.) vIkndo he will sell vIgor without poor (f.) vIcari viclo central vIJ . put-in (Imp.) vljen putting vIjā I may put vlje you may put vljndo he will but vijndo (se) I shall put VIdpast of /vIj/ go (Imp.) vIn vInej go (hereafter) (Imp.) vInen going

I may go vIna vIni having gone vIne you may go vIns he may go vinô we may go vino you go (Imp.pl.) vIrendo he will become unhappy vIrgndo he will bite visa(-y) extinguish (Imp.) vIsan extinguishing vIsam be extinguished vIsara(-y) cause to extinguish vīyā marriage vi she was vie you were (f.) vicar thought vicari having thought vicare he thought I was (f.) vi(ya) vir brave ve you were (m.) vēj bathe (Imp.) vejar cause to bathe (Imp.) vēda they will go vedi she will go

you will go (f.)

vědiě

vede-vene you will go (m) vedo he will go vedo (se) I shall go vedyū they will go (f.) ve sit (Imp.) vei having sat ved sit (hereafter) (Imp.) veja sit (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) vethpast of /ve/ vetha they sat (m) vethi she sat vethe you sat vetho he sat vethyu they sat (f.) vene you will go (m) cut (Imp.) ver house of animal (Obl.) vere vesa refreshment 48 flow (Imp.) ver enmity vera cause to flow (Imp.) veri enemy vel marriage-procession veli soon (£.) VÕ we may be

he was

VO

road-guard (obl.) vorave road-guard voravo I may sit vya they went (m) vya cause to sit (Imp.) Vyar vyū they went (f.) he went VYO vyo (se) I went vyo you sit (Imp.pl.) 131 ses1e rabbit sek doubt sakhat hard sakhi generouse sankh conch . songit music real, true (f) sagi sage can real, true (m) sago

seci really correct, true, (f.)
seci correct, true, (m.)

890

seji full, complete (f.)

saje full, complete, (m.obl.sg.)

truth

sat	run
set	strike (Imp.)
free	having stricken
soth	sixty
umitea	sixtieth
pee pee	call
senentri	thirty seven
sentali	forty seven
senseth	sixty seven
sot	seven
setanu	ninety seven
satavan	fifty seven
satoter	seventy seven
sot-gonu uneg-tes	seven-fold
sotyai~sotyavi	twenty seven
sotyaiye	twenty seven (obl.)
sotyavi	twenty seven
setra	seventeen
seni	thin (f.)
sonu	thin (m)
sant	saint
send	connect (Imp.)
qea	snake
gopor	generous
soplo	small snake

des all sabar patience sebye member səbər strong endes word somer war somacar news understand (hereafter) (Imp.) icimes. samji having understand səmje understanding samjado he will understand samjyo understood sambar remember (Imp.) saynsa king ser pond . soru begins Sara mustard seeds (obl.) Sares musterseeds sorkar government ser be spoiled soresth sixty seven sala advice sava one quarter one and one quarter 808 mother-in-law

breath

green (f)

Sa

sai

saUra in-laws daukar rich vegetable sag exchange (obl) sate sato exchange sadaa half sadehalf (obl) sathi comparione sadan means san buffalo santi peace saph clean sab master before, infront same sey help having filled sari sar spoil (Imp.) sari a garment sari having spoiled absolutely sev sal year sIkhndo he will learn sIn horn singar decorate (Imp) sItyasi eighty seven

seventy

sInter

Sind (now a part of Fakistan) sInd sIndi of Sind sIb sew (Imp.) blbida they will sew sibi having sawed sībija~sībja sew (hereafter) (Imp. pl.) sībije-sībje should be sewn slbibo-slbbo we shall sew sība-sībya sew (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) sloja sew (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) slbje should be sewn sIbnda they will sow sibbo we shall sew sībyā you seved slbyo sew (Imp.pl.) move (Imp.) sIr sival temples (obl.) sivals temple sī lion sigdana ground-nuts cold si winter siaro siare Jackal (obl.) sim-sima border needle sUi sUarthi~svarthi selfish

be dryed (Imp.)

suk

sUk--sUkypast of /sUk/ sUkhe happiness (obl.pl.) sun hear (Imp.) sUni having heard sunae he sang sUnd ginger sUt-_sUmypast of /sUm/ suto , slept (m.sg.) sUder be alright, improve (Imp.) sUdrado he will improve s Unan-s Uhan recognize (Imp.) sUnny--sUnatpast of /sUnan/ sUnni having recognized sUnndo he will recognize s Um sleep (Imp.) cause to sleep (Imp.) sUmar having slept sUmi sleep (hereafter) (imp.pl.) sUmja sUmpu to sleep sumbo we shall sleep sUr tone survat beginning bear (f.) sUvrani pain sur suar. swine

oun

surnj

suro varrior 80 with, by that, those 80 ser move serri sugar cane 83 he suffered, he beared he may suffer, he may bear 53 stra cause to suffer, cause to bear 80 oath 80 show heard 80 sou shows soe shows (obl.) soe hundreds (obl.) WOPPY 800 think (Imp.) soc invent (Imp.) sod gold son, nut sopari flourish (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) sobja sobnu to flourish sobbo we shall flourish sixteen soro hundred 80 sokho еаву father-in-law soro

nerve

snayu

sverthi

selfish

/h/

haslo

hojem

hajmat

hajar

hajarê

heji

hot

hen

hone

han hannu

hoth

ho the

hothiyer

hons

hamesa

hoydol

hor

hal

200

holo1

halate

helei (ya) (se)

heleyű

small swan

barber

shaving

thousand

thousand (obl.pl.)

yet

shep

strike (Imp.)

you may strike

to neigh

hand

hands (obl.)

weapon

swan

always

cavlary

God Shiva

move (Imp.)

she moved

you moved (f)

I moved

they moved (f)

heleyű(sí) we moved (f) haloj move (hereafter) (Imp.) helen moving bala I may move haladi she will be moved halado he will be moved hala(-y) cause to move (Imp.) ibialed she will cause to move halaido he will cause to move halai having caused to move, having shaken holaija cause to move (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) halaije should be caused to move helaibo ve shall cause to move holaiya I may cause to move halma he caused to move holae you caused to move holaj be caused to be moved (Imp.) holaja I may be caused to be moved helaji having caused to be moved he may be caused to be moved halaj3 holejo be caused to be moved (Imp.pl) halanu he was moved holavo he caused to move holayo cause to move (Imp.pl.)

moved.

she will be caused to be got

holaradi

halarade

halarado

helara(-y)

holaraidi

holara idi (ya) (se)

helaraido

helara ido (se)

halarai

holaraije

helaraibo

helaralya

helarae

helarse

holorai

helaraja

helaraji

helaraje

helarajo

holerani

holaranu

halaranu(se)

helarare

holarayo

helaraya

you will be caused to be got

moved

he will be caused to be got

moved

cause to get moved (Imp.)

she will cause to get moved

I shall cause to get moved (f)

he will cause to get moved

I shall cause to get moved(m)

having caused to get moved

should be caused to get moved

we shall cause to get moved

I may cause to get moved

he caused to get moved

you caused to get moved

be caused to get moved (Imp.)

I may be caused to be got

moved

having caused to be got moved

he may be caused to be got

Bevos

be caused to be got moved

she was caused to be got

moved

he was caused to be got moved

I was caused to be got moved

you were caused to be got

moved

caused to get moved

cause to get moved (Imp.pl.)

heli

hale

hald.

helo.

holo

helko

halja

in lie

heljs

halnu

halnie-halndie

halnda

halnda(sī)

holndi

helndie

halndi (ya) (se)

halnde halne

halndo

helndo (se)

he ladyu-he layu

halbo

halya

holya(sĩ)

halyo

haph

haphndo

having moved

you may move

he may move

we may move

move (Imp.pl.)

light (in weight)

move (hereafter) (Imp.pl)

should be moved

it may be moved

to move

you will move (f)

they will move (m)

we shall move

she will move

you will move (f)

I shall move (f)

you will move (m)

he will move

I shall move (m)

they will move (f)

we shall move

they moved (m)

we moved (m)

he moved

gasp (Imp.)

he will gasp

hane now hathi elephant hathire elephant (obl.) hay hay alas ! har garland, defeat har pour down (Imp.) hal condition hikri one, once (f.) hikre one (obl.) hIkro one, once (m) hing stool (Imp.) hIte here hIn he, she; this (obl.) hIni they (obl.) hīsab manner, way, hīg asafoetida 21 he, she this hUa I may be hUa they were hUn that (obl.) hUmlo attack huda they will be (m) huda(sī) we shall be (m) hudi she will be hudia-hunie you will be (f)

you will be (m)

hude~hune

hudo . he will be hude (se) I shall be (m) hudyu-hunyu they will be (f) be (Imp.) 2312 that hu huo be (Imp.pl.) huin be (hereafter) (Imp.pl.) hunie you will be (f) hune you will be (m) hunyū they will be (f) he 0 ! oh ! heth under hetha from the bottom hethara to the bottom hedki hic cup ben deer hemet courage hevar now heveri Just nov h3 struck hedo like this (in hight) haya fast hBya-hBya very fast such (pl.) hdra such (f.sg.) heri such (m.obl.sg.) here clever

hosyar